

# Dirac Fermions and Topological Phases in Magnetic Topological Insulator Films

Kai-Zhi Bai<sup>1\*</sup>, Bo Fu<sup>2\*</sup> and Shun-Qing Shen<sup>1,3†</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Department of Physics, The University of Hong Kong, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong, China

<sup>2</sup> School of Sciences, Great Bay University, Dongguan, China

<sup>3</sup> Quantum Science Center of Guangdong-Hong Kong-Macau Greater Bay Area, China

\* kzbai@connect.hku.hk, \* fubo@gbu.edu.cn, † sshen@hku.hk

## Abstract

We develop a Dirac fermion theory for topological phases in magnetic topological insulator films. The theory is based on exact solutions of the energies and the wave functions for an effective model of the three-dimensional topological insulator (TI) film. It is found that the TI film consists of a pair of massless or massive Dirac fermions for the surface states, and a series of massive Dirac fermions for the bulk states. The massive Dirac fermion always carries zero or integer quantum Hall conductance when the valence band is fully occupied while the massless Dirac fermion carries a one-half quantum Hall conductance when the chemical potential is located around the Dirac point for a finite range. The magnetic exchange interaction in the magnetic layers in the film can be used to manipulate either the masses or chirality of the Dirac fermions and gives rise to distinct topological phases, which cover the known topological insulating phases, such as the quantum anomalous Hall effect, quantum spin Hall effect and axion effect, and also the novel topological metallic phases, such as the half-quantized Hall effect, half quantum mirror Hall effect, and metallic quantum anomalous Hall effect.

Copyright attribution to authors.

This work is a submission to SciPost Physics.

License information to appear upon publication.

Publication information to appear upon publication.

Received Date

Accepted Date

Published Date

1

## 2 Contents

3	<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
4	<b>2 Massless and massive Dirac fermions in a topological insulator film</b>	<b>5</b>
5	2.1 The continuum model	7
6	2.2 The lattice model	10
7	2.2.1 Oscillating $\mathbb{Z}_2$ invariant	13
8	<b>3 The quantum Hall conductivity of Dirac fermions</b>	<b>13</b>
9	3.1 In the continuum model	14
10	3.1.1 Gapless/Metallic case	14
11	3.1.2 Insulating case	15
12	3.2 In the lattice model	15
13	3.2.1 Gapless/Metallic case	16

14	3.2.2 Insulating case	16
15	3.3 A glance in proof of half-quantization	17
16	3.4 View from field theory	18
17	3.5 Unexchangeable limits	20
18	<b>4 Magnetic and orbital fields in topological insulator films</b>	<b>22</b>
19	4.1 Magnetism polarized along $z$ direction	22
20	4.1.1 Uniform field strength	24
21	4.1.2 Weak Zeeman field	24
22	4.1.3 Strong Zeeman field	27
23	4.2 Other fields	27
24	<b>5 Topological phases with weak field</b>	<b>29</b>
25	5.1 Half quantum mirror Hall effect: a non-magnetic film with mirror symmetry	29
26	5.2 Quantum anomalous Hall effect: Chern Insulators	32
27	5.2.1 Symmetric magnetic structure	32
28	5.2.2 Asymmetric magnetic structure	35
29	5.2.3 Mirror layer Chern number	36
30	5.3 Axion insulator: an antisymmetric magnetic structure	39
31	5.4 $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$ film: even and odd number of magnetic layers	40
32	5.4.1 Odd layer: Chern insulator	42
33	5.4.2 Even layer: axion insulator	42
34	5.5 Half-quantized anomalous Hall effect: a semi-magnetic film	42
35	5.6 Phase diagram	45
36	<b>6 Topological phases with strong field</b>	<b>47</b>
37	6.1 Metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect: a film with a magnetic sandwich structure	47
38		
39	6.1.1 A qualitatively model with $n = 1, 2$	50
40	6.1.2 Lower threshold by decreasing the mass in the middle	53
41	6.1.3 Stronger field in the middle	54
42	6.2 Higher Chern Number Insulator	55
43	6.3 Cooperation between middle and surfaces	56
44	<b>7 Discussion and conclusion</b>	<b>60</b>
45	<b>A Derivation of Eq. (1a)</b>	<b>63</b>
46	A.1 Symmetry analysis of solutions	67
47	A.2 Equivalent block Hamiltonian	67
48	A.3 Analytic expression for mass term	68
49	A.4 Finite-size correction to mass term	71
50	<b>B Derivation of Eq. (1b)</b>	<b>73</b>
51	<b>References</b>	<b>78</b>
52		
53		

## 54 1 Introduction

55 Topological phases, bridging the abstract topological classification [1–4] to the practical  
56 electronic phases of matter, have gained an increasing interest and redefined the way people  
57 understand and estimate physics in condensed matter systems [5–7]. In contrast to phases  
58 described by the Landau-Ginzburg theory and spontaneous symmetry breaking scheme  
59 [8, 9], phases termed after topological share no local order parameter, but topological  
60 invariants [4, 10–12] defined globally only. These invariants, such as Chern numbers and  
61 the  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  invariant, exhibit robustness against continuous deformations that do not alter  
62 certain preconditions imposed over specified topological classes, like the global gap for an  
63 insulator [13–16], and symmetry constraints over the total system [3] or the Fermi surface  
64 in a metal [4].

65 Within the vast topological phase landscape, the three-dimensional topological insula-  
66 tor (3D TI) [17–23] stands out as a unique state of matter, protected by the time-reversal  
67 symmetry and characterized by a strong  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  index. As a result of the celebrated bulk-  
68 boundary correspondence [24–27], the surface of a 3D TI hosts a single gapless Dirac  
69 fermion, whose low-energy dispersion is necessarily governed by the massless Dirac equa-  
70 tion in 2D, exhibiting spin-momentum locking [28]. Nevertheless, the ever existence of  
71 such a gapless Dirac fermion has to be restrained by the no-go Nielsen-Ninomiya theo-  
72 rem [29, 30], and it turns out that the high-energy states of this fermionic band gain a  
73 bulk-like mass [31, 32] to reconcile the contradiction. The sign of this restored mass is  
74 defined as the chirality [33] for a regulated 2D gapless Dirac fermion, and it is responsible  
75 for the half-quantization of its Hall conductance. The emergence of the high-energy mass  
76 term due to the lattice regularization essentially breaks the parity symmetry explicitly [34]  
77 and evades locality [35] simultaneously.

78 The gapless behavior of the surface Dirac fermion can be altered through the finite-  
79 size effect. When the topological insulator is exfoliated into a film, two gapless Dirac  
80 fermions emerge at the top and bottom surfaces. However, as the thickness of the film is  
81 further reduced to the ultra-thin limit, by quantum confinement [36–38] the surface states  
82 of the two Dirac bands become gapped. The thickness-dependent mass gap exhibits an  
83 exponentially decaying and oscillating pattern [39], revealing multiple topological phase  
84 transitions. This phenomenon provides a pathway to realize the 2D quantum spin Hall  
85 effect [12, 40–42] with an ultra-thin TI film.

86 The occurrence of spontaneous magnetization can alter the topological property of the  
87 TI film. Typically, a pair of gapless Dirac fermions emerge at two surfaces of a TI film,  
88 each carrying half-quantized Hall conductance with opposite signs under mirror symmetry,  
89 leading to the half quantum mirror Hall effect [33]. The effect shares a similar quantized  
90 non-local transport signature with the quantum spin Hall effect [12, 43–45], while being  
91 intrinsically a metallic phase. Further gapping out the surface states by an out-of-plane  
92 magnetism [46] gives rise to various topologically distinct phases. Within the scheme of  
93 magnetic topological insulators, two such phases have been discovered as the Chern insu-  
94 lator [47–49], aka quantum anomalous Hall effect (QAHE) that is characterized by Chern  
95 invariant and quantized Hall plateau, and the axion insulator [50, 51], marked by zero Hall  
96 plateau and non-vanishing longitudinal conductance. A semi-magnetic topological insula-  
97 tor, on the other hand, bears with the half-quantized quantum anomalous Hall effect (half  
98 QAHE) [31, 52, 53] with a half-quantized Hall conductance and unusual bulk-boundary  
99 correspondence, signed by the absence of edge state but the appearance of the power-law  
100 decaying current from boundary to bulk. In addition, if the magnetization is pushed away  
101 from the surfaces and towards the middle of the film with sufficient strength, the metal-  
102 lic quantized anomalous Hall effect (metallic QAHE) [32] can occur, which also exhibits

103 integer Hall conductance but lacks chiral edge states.

104 Remarkably, the physics underlying the topological phases in the (magnetic) topo-  
 105 logical insulator films can be all attributed to the topological properties of the emergent  
 106 two-dimensional Dirac fermions in the system. While certain phases, like QAHE and half  
 107 QAHE, can be well explained by focusing on the interplay between surface Dirac fermions  
 108 and magnetism, there exist other phases that essentially involve higher bulk bands, no-  
 109 tably the metallic QAHE. These higher bulk bands are identified as a series of massive  
 110 Dirac fermions, revealing that both gapless and gapped Dirac fermions in the topological  
 111 insulator film interact with spontaneous magnetism to generate various topological phases.  
 112 The topological index, or the quantized Hall conductance in each phase, is always given  
 113 by some gapped or gapless Dirac fermion(s), described by a modified Dirac equation.

114 In this paper, we will provide a unified framework to discuss and review how emer-  
 115 gent Dirac fermions exist and generate various topological phases in magnetic topological  
 116 insulator films, thus naturally partitioning the paper into two main parts. The first part  
 117 of the paper will focus on establishing the existence of Dirac fermions in magnetic topo-  
 118 logical insulator films. This discussion will heavily rely on a newly defined basis derived  
 119 from an exact solution in 1D. We will thoroughly investigate the Hall conductivity car-  
 120 ried by different types of Dirac fermions within this framework, setting the stage for the  
 121 subsequent discussion of topological phases. In the second part we will delve into the  
 122 characterization and analysis of topological phases in magnetic topological insulator films.  
 123 These phases will be classified into weak- and strong-magnetism regimes, providing a com-  
 124 prehensive understanding of how different magnetic strengths influence the emergence of  
 125 various topological states. In the remainder of this introduction we will give an overview  
 126 of the main results of this paper following the line.

127 The TI film is equivalent to a set of Dirac fermions: a pair of massless Dirac fermions  
 128 for bands that contain the surface states, and a series of massive Dirac fermions consisting  
 129 of purely bulk states, classified by their momentum-dependent mass terms  $m_n(\mathbf{k})$ . This  
 130 scenario holds within both its continuum and lattice model versions, and is made clear  
 131 and exact through an introduced unitary transformation in the whole  $\mathbf{k}$ -space, based on  
 132 an exact solution in one dimension perpendicular to the film plane. The finite-size effect  
 133 is briefly discussed here.

134 The Hall conductivity carried by a massive or gapless Dirac fermion is discussed gen-  
 135 erally, with additional symmetry constraints imposed on the Fermi surface for the latter  
 136 one, for both continuum and lattice models. A direct deduction leads to the result that the  
 137 Hall conductivities associated with the gapless and gapped Dirac fermions in the TI film  
 138 are  $\pm e^2/2h$  and  $\mathbf{0}$ , respectively, leading to a half quantum mirror Hall effect by  $1/2 - 1/2$ ,  
 139 serving as a metallic partner to the insulating quantum spin Hall effect. A brief proof for  
 140 the half-quantization of a metallic band structure with considered symmetry constraints  
 141 over the Fermi surface is also presented. Additionally, a field theoretical deduction for the  
 142 half quantization, and a discussion on handling the Hall conductivity of a gapless Dirac  
 143 fermion are provided.

144 The introduced magnetism, characterized by out-of-plane polarization, manifests as  
 145 two equivalent matrix Higgs fields that collectively couple the Dirac fermions in a TI  
 146 film, generating and altering their masses. Treated at the mean-field level, the exchange  
 147 interaction stands as an out-of-plane Zeeman field in TI film, which transforms via the  
 148 unitary transformation into two momentum-dependent matrix fields  $\mathbf{I}_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$ . The two  
 149 fields directly couple different species of Dirac fermions and alter their masses, serving as  
 150 mass-generating Higgs fields, whose non-vanishing expectation values arise concurrently  
 151 with the spontaneous establishment of the ferromagnetic order. Depending on the field  
 152 strength, generally two regimes as weak and strong magnetism are classified. In addi-

tion, the forms of other kinds of spin and orbital fields under unitary transformation are discussed.

In the weak Zeeman field regime, the topological phases are characterized by focusing on  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  matrix elements affecting the two gapless Dirac fermions near the surface. This framework clarifies the underlying physics behind the Chern insulator, axion insulator, and half QAHE, with symmetric, antisymmetric, or unilateral distribution of Zeeman fields at the surface of the TI film, respectively. The resulting Hall conductance exhibits quantized nature:  $\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0}$ , and  $\mathbf{1}/2 + \mathbf{0}$  in units of  $e^2/h$ . Additionally, the mirror layer Chern number in the Chern insulator with symmetrically distributed magnetism is examined, revealing  $(\mathbf{1}/4) - (\mathbf{1}/2) - (\mathbf{1}/4)$  partition for the non-trivial band and  $(\mathbf{c}/4) - (-\mathbf{c}/2) - (\mathbf{c}/4)$  with  $\mathbf{c} \approx \mathbf{1}$  for the trivial band.

In the strong Zeeman field regime, the discussion is based on the effective mass picture, involving the gapped series of Dirac fermions through matrix Higgs fields couplings. Another metallic topological phase, the metallic QAHE, is identified where the magnetism is centralized in the middle of the TI film. Despite remaining gapless and lacking chiral edge states, its Hall conductance is quantized into an integer over  $e^2/h$ . Additionally, higher Chern insulators resulting from sub-band inversion at high-symmetry points are presented under a uniform Zeeman field. Furthermore, the paper discusses topological phases characterized by cooperation between magnetism in the middle and at the surface, based on the framework of gapping out surface states in the metallic QAHE.

The plan of the remainder of this paper is as follows. Beginning with the exact solution of the model Hamiltonian for a topological insulator film in Section 2, we demonstrate that a TI film comprises a pair of gapless Dirac fermions, which contain low-energy surface states, and a series of gapped massive bulk Dirac fermions. Section 3 offers a comprehensive discussion on the Hall conductivity, a critical indicator revealing the presence of topological phases, carried by different species of Dirac fermions. Moving on to the inclusion of magnetism in Section 4, we unveil the role of magnetism as matrix Higgs fields, responsible for generating masses of the Dirac fermions in a TI film. This section also briefly explores other spin and orbital fields possible within the framework. In Section 5, based on the weak magnetism approximation, we identify topological phases processable under the lowest four-band model framework, which stresses surface states with magnetism: half quantum mirror Hall effect, quantum anomalous Hall effect, half-quantized anomalous Hall effect, and axion insulator. We introduce the mirror layer Chern number and illustrate the Hall conductivity distribution in symmetrically magnetized TI film. The Chern and axion insulator phases in interlayer anti-ferromagnetic material  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  are also discussed under the same framework. In Section 6, we delve into topological phases within relatively strong magnetism regimes, such as high Chern number insulators and the metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect, where bulk Dirac fermions come into play. The paper concludes in Section 7 with a summary and a discussion of future prospects.

## 2 Massless and massive Dirac fermions in a topological insulator film

In this section, by solving the minimal continuum and lattice models of the topological insulator, we show that from the physical aspect, a topological insulator film is composed of a pair of gapless Dirac fermions, whose low-energy parts near Dirac point are composed of massless surface states inside the bulk gap while the high-energy parts away from the Dirac point evolve into bulk states gradually, together with a series of gapped massive

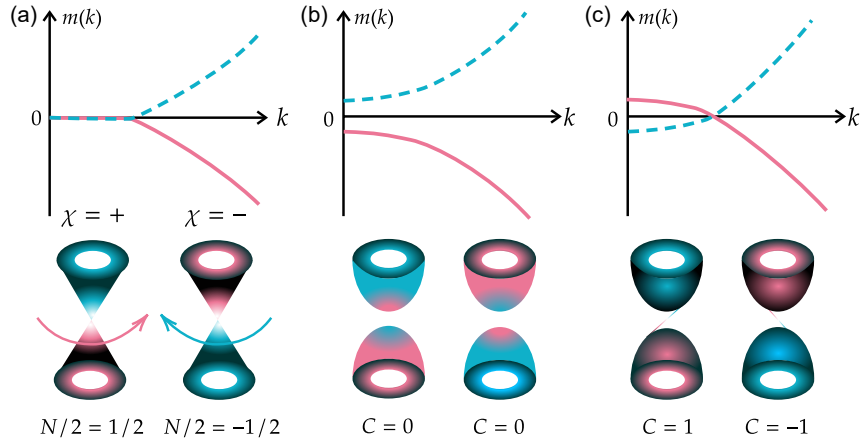


Figure 1: Schematic momentum dependent mass configurations (upper panel) and corresponding band structure of Dirac fermions (lower panel). The quantization of Hall conductivity is denoted by  $\mathbf{N}$  for half quantization in a metallic band and  $\mathbf{C}$  for quantization at the bottom of a gapped band. The colors assigned to the Dirac cones represent the sign of Berry curvature with red for positive and blue for negative. (a) On the left panel, two gapless Dirac fermions are shown, whose masses are zero at low-energy near the Dirac point (assumed to be  $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$ ), while non-vanishing at high-energy with opposite signs, which we define as the **chirality**  $\chi$  of a 2D gapless Dirac fermion. Such chirality unambiguously determines the sign of the loop integral of Berry connection around the Fermi surface, consequently determining the sign of half-quantized Hall conductivity. (b) In the middle, two trivially gapped massive Dirac fermions are present, with masses being either positive or negative for all  $\mathbf{k}$ , leading to a sign change of Berry curvature and a totally vanishing Hall conductivity labeled by zero Chern number. (c) On the right panel, two non-trivial gapped Dirac cones are displayed, and the corresponding masses exhibit kink configurations with sign change between low and high-energy areas. Such non-trivial mass configuration indicates overall Berry curvature sign convergence, and leads to a non-vanishing Hall conductivity labelled by an integer Chern number. The non-triviality is also addressed by formally drawing states connecting conduction and valence bands, well-known as chiral edge states for a Chern band under open boundary conditions [13, 14].

199 Dirac fermions consisting of purely bulk states. Quantitatively, we write

$$H_c(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_n [\lambda_{\parallel} \mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma} + m_n(\mathbf{k}) \tau_z \sigma_z], \quad (1a)$$

$$H_l(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} [\lambda_{\parallel} \sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \lambda_{\parallel} \sin(k_y a) \sigma_y + m_n(\mathbf{k}) \tau_z \sigma_z], \quad (1b)$$

200 for the continuum and lattice model, respectively. Here we adopt a homogeneous in-film-  
 201 plane parameter set with  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\lambda_{\parallel}$  as the in plane lattice constant and Fermi velocity, and  
 202  $\mathbf{k} = (\mathbf{k}_x, \mathbf{k}_y)$  is the in-film-plane wavevector. Notice that an infinitely direct summed Dirac  
 203 fermions exist in the continuum model, while there are only  $2L_z$  species with  $L_z$  the layer  
 204 number along opened  $\mathbf{z}$ -direction of the film in the lattice model. For the mainly concerned  
 205 individual Dirac cone with a single Dirac point at  $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$ , its topological property is revealed  
 206 based on a general discussion over the nature of its Hall conductivity quantization, as  
 207 revealed in the schematic diagram Fig. 1. Especially, in the strong TI film with a single  
 208 Dirac cone at  $\Gamma$ , aka  $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$  point, the gapless pair of Dirac fermions carry  $\pm e^2/2h$ , as  
 209 half-quantized Hall conductivity, while the gapped series are all trivial.

## 210 2.1 The continuum model

211 In this subsection, the exact solution of the confined 3D modified Dirac equation, which  
 212 is the continuum model describing the topological insulator film, is presented. A detailed  
 213 study can be found in Appendix A.

214 The continuum model Hamiltonian for the 3D TI reads [27, 54]

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{TI}}(\mathbf{k}, k_z) &= \lambda_{\parallel} (\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) \tau_x + \lambda_{\perp} k_z \sigma_z \tau_x + (m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_{\perp} k_z^2) \sigma_0 \tau_z \\ &= H_{1d}(\mathbf{k}, k_z) + H_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k}), \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

215 where  $H_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel} (\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) \tau_x$ ,  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) = m_0 - t_{\parallel} k^2$ . This Hamiltonian is isotropic only in  $\mathbf{x}$ - $\mathbf{y}$   
 216 plane. Substituting  $k_z \mapsto -i \partial_z$  leads to the real- $\mathbf{z}$ -space description for the 1-D part as  
 217  $H_{1d}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}) = \oplus_{s=\pm} \mathbf{h}(s)$ , where

$$\mathbf{h}(s) = -is \lambda_{\perp} \partial_z \tau_x + (m_0(\mathbf{k}) + t_{\perp} \partial_z^2) \tau_z. \quad (3)$$

218 Solving the eigenproblem  $\mathbf{h}(s)\boldsymbol{\phi} = E\boldsymbol{\phi}$  leads to specifically symmetrized chiral-partner  
 219 basis [36–38]

$$\boldsymbol{\varphi}^n(s) = C \begin{pmatrix} -is \lambda_{\perp} f_+^n \\ t_{\perp} \eta^n f_-^n \end{pmatrix}, \quad E = m_n, \quad (4a)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\chi}^n(s) = C \begin{pmatrix} t_{\perp} \eta^n f_-^n \\ is \lambda_{\perp} f_+^n \end{pmatrix}, \quad E = -m_n, \quad (4b)$$

220 where the dependence on  $(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z})$  is inherited inside even/odd parity functions  $f_{\pm}^n(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z})$   
 221 and real factor  $\eta^n(\mathbf{k})$ , whose definition can be found in Appendix A. The  $\mathbf{k}$ -dependent  
 222 eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{h}(s)$  is represented by  $\pm m_n(\mathbf{k})$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , as a mass term, which can be  
 223 solved in a closed manner through equations

$$m_n = m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_{\perp} \frac{\xi_1^2 g(\xi_1) - \xi_2^2 g(\xi_2)}{g(\xi_1) - g(\xi_2)}, \quad (5a)$$

$$\xi_{\alpha} = \sqrt{-\frac{F}{D} + (-1)^{\alpha-1} \frac{\sqrt{R}}{D}}, \quad \alpha = 1, 2, \quad (5b)$$

224 where

$$\begin{cases} g(\xi) = \tan(\xi L/2)/\xi \\ D = 2t_{\perp}^2 \\ F = -2m_0(k)t_{\perp} + \lambda_{\perp}^2 \\ R = F^2 - 2D(m_0^2(k) - m_n^2) \end{cases} \quad (6)$$

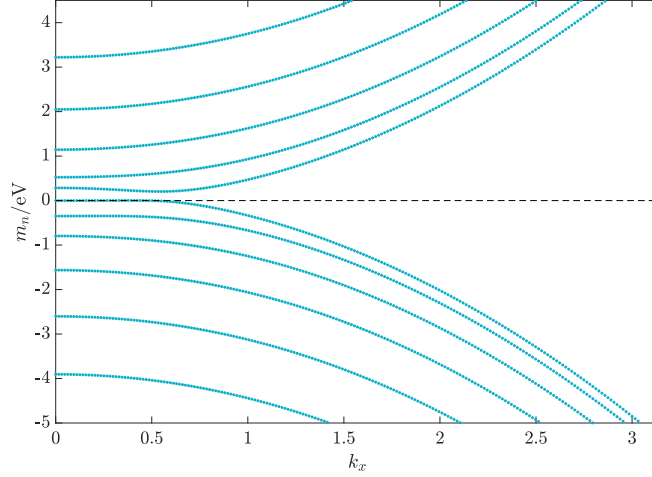


Figure 2: The momentum-dependent mass of Dirac fermions in a TI film as a continuum model. The lowest several momentum-dependent  $m_n(\mathbf{k})$  along  $k_x$  solved from closed equations Eq. (5) are presented, while the homogeneous in-plane nature of the model ensures that the asymptotic behavior of  $m_n(\mathbf{k})$  is the same as  $\mathbf{k} \rightarrow \infty$ . Here the film thickness  $L = (L_z + 1)\mathbf{c}$  with  $L_z = 10$  is chosen here as a TI film with 10 layers. The index  $n$  is assigned such that  $|m_n|$  increases with  $n$ . Especially notice the sign-jump behavior that  $\text{sgn}(m_n(\infty)) = (-1)^n$ . From here on, the model parameters on lattice for numerical calculations and verifications are set as  $\lambda_{\parallel} = 0.41$  eV,  $\lambda_{\perp} = 0.44$  eV,  $t_{\parallel} = 0.566$  eV,  $t_{\perp} = 0.4$  eV,  $m_0 = 0.28$  eV,  $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b} = 1$  nm,  $\mathbf{c} = 0.5$  nm if with no specific indication [54]. **Generically, these parameters can be determined through the first-principle calculations, and the specific choice here is for the sake of illustration.** This parameter choice makes the bulk 3D TI a strong one with a single Dirac point at  $\Gamma$ . And for the continuum model discussed here, the substitution  $\lambda_{\parallel} \rightarrow \lambda_{\parallel}\mathbf{a}$ ,  $\lambda_{\perp} \rightarrow \lambda_{\perp}\mathbf{c}$ ,  $t_{\parallel} \rightarrow t_{\parallel}\mathbf{a}^2$ ,  $t_{\perp} \rightarrow t_{\perp}\mathbf{c}^2$  should be recognized.

225 Projecting TI film Hamiltonian on eigenstates of  $H_{1d}$  equals to performing an infinite-  
 226 dimensional local unitary transformation in  $\mathbf{k}$ -space, which gives a Hamiltonian equivalent  
 227 to the TI film one as (see Appendix A.)

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_n \lambda_{\parallel} \tau_0(\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) + m_n(\mathbf{k}) \tau_z \sigma_z, \quad (7)$$

228 as Eq. (1a), where the projection basis is organized as

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_1^n &= \begin{pmatrix} \varphi^n(+), \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \Phi_2^n &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \chi^n(-) \end{pmatrix}, \\ \Phi_3^n &= \begin{pmatrix} \chi^n(+), \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \Phi_4^n &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \varphi^n(-) \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

229 We have to emphasize here that although spin is still preserved as  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$  in the transformed  
 230 Hamiltonian, the degrees of freedom  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  newly appeared here share a different meaning



231 compared with the original TI film Hamiltonian. Notice that  $\Phi_{1,4}$  ( $\Phi_{2,3}$ ) are  $\mathbf{z}$ -parity even  
 232 (odd) states, while  $\Phi_{1,2}$  ( $\Phi_{3,4}$ ) are  $\mathbf{z}$ -mirror even (odd) states, which means that under  
 233 the projection, the unitary matrices related to two operators are transformed into (see  
 234 Appendix A.)

$$P_z = \tau_z \sigma_z, \quad (9a)$$

$$M_z = \tau_z. \quad (9b)$$

235 Meanwhile, the local unitary matrix in  $\mathbf{k}$ -space that transforms the continuum model  
 236 Hamiltonian under the original representation is formally written as

$$U^c(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}) = (\{\{\Phi(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z})\}_i\}^n), \quad (10)$$

237 where the double brackets mean that we arrange  $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$  index inside each  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ ,  
 238 we see that  $U^c$  is topologically trivial in  $(\mathbf{k}_x, \mathbf{k}_y)$  space, as it consists of certain arrange-  
 239 ment of eigenstates  $\Phi_i^n$ , which are solved from the separated 1-D Hamiltonian and has a  
 240 well-defined global representation within the same gauge choice in  $(\mathbf{k}_x, \mathbf{k}_y)$  plane, and is  
 241 therefore topologically trivial.

242 Our solution reveals that the 3D topological insulator film is composed of effectively  
 243 2D multi-Dirac fermions, differing by their mass terms represented in Fig. 2 only. Notice  
 244 that for the continuum model, there are in fact an infinite number of  $m_n$ s as a basic  
 245 property of bound states in a quantum well, and we just present several lowest branches  
 246 of the solutions. Also notice that from the solved  $m_n$ , the mass terms show sign jumping  
 247 behavior at high-energy (large  $\mathbf{k}$ ). Comparing the mass configurations in continuum model  
 248 with the general classification in Fig. 1 reveals that while all  $n \geq 2$  masses serve as trivial  
 249 massive Dirac band in the bulk, the lowest states with  $n = 1$  are necessarily not, which  
 250 in the presented case serve as two possible gapless Dirac cones whose low-energy parts  
 251 are localized  $\mathbf{z}$ -mirror-symmetrically at top and bottom surfaces. Especially, the analytic  
 252 expression for  $m_1(\mathbf{k})$ , when the film is thick enough, can be written as [33] (also see  
 253 Appendix A, and here  $t_\perp > 0$  is assumed without losing generality)

$$m_1(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k}))m_0(\mathbf{k}). \quad (11)$$

254 Notice that the Heaviside Theta function appearing here only reveals physics that, in  
 255 the low-energy zone near the Dirac point, the surface Dirac cone is massless, preserving  
 256 both time-reversal and parity symmetry, while for the high-energy part away from the  
 257 Dirac point, the non-vanishing mass term reveals that the surface Dirac cone has emerged  
 258 into the bulk state, which breaks both time-reversal and parity symmetry explicitly. The  
 259 appearance of such non-vanishing high-energy mass term is analogous to the introduced  
 260 regulator [55–57] in quantum field theory. In this sense, one should not worry about the  
 261 nonanalytic behavior of the Theta function near  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) = 0$ , as it can always be replaced  
 262 by its mollifier [31, 58].

263 For the completeness of discussion here, we note that an ultra-thin TI film bears an  
 264 exponentially decaying oscillating small gap  $m(0)$  with varying film thickness [36–38],  
 265 which reads upon the lowest order as (for derivation, also see Appendix A)

$$m_1(0) \approx -\frac{4m_0}{\sqrt{4\gamma-1}} \sin(u\sqrt{4\gamma-1}L)e^{-uL}, \quad (12)$$

266 with  $\gamma = m_0 t_\perp / \lambda_\perp^2$ ,  $u = \lambda_\perp / 2t_\perp$ . The numerical result is shown in Fig. 3, with excellent  
 267 agreement between the lowest order approximated gap and that from solving the set of non-  
 268 linear equations, especially for relatively large  $L$ . The exponentially decaying tendency is

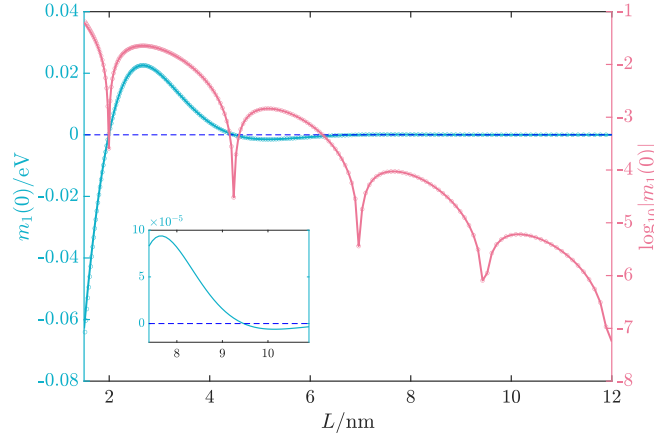


Figure 3: Finite-size effect of an ultra-thin TI film in the continuum model, revealed by the exponentially decaying oscillating mass gap  $2\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0})$  of surface Dirac cones. Both  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0})$  and its logarithmic absolute value varying with film thickness  $L$  are shown. The solid line represents results from Eq. (12), while the circles are obtained from solving the self-consistent equations Eq. (5) directly. The inset shows an amplified area of the  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0}) - L$  diagram.

269 best revealed by the logarithmic absolute value of mass gap at  $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$ , as its center decreases  
 270 linearly with thickness, while the oscillating nature is revealed by the dips, which will  
 271 extend to negative infinity at strict gap closing point, and the mass gap will reverse its  
 272 sign before and after the dip, as shown directly by the  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0}) - L$  diagram and the inner  
 273 amplified picture. Since  $\mathbf{m}_1(\infty) = \mathbf{m}_0(\infty) < \mathbf{0}$  is certain, we see that the oscillating  
 274 behavior of  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0})$  with thickness  $L$  can drive  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k})$  to share configuration that jumps  
 275 between the one shown in Fig. 1(b) and (c), i.e., between a trivial band and a band with  
 276 unit Chern number. Then for an ultra-thin film which owns two copies  $\pm\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k})$  reflected  
 277 by  $\tau_z$  in Eq. (7), the  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  topological index shows jumping behavior between  $\mathbb{Z}_2 = \mathbf{0}$  and  
 278  $\mathbb{Z}_2 = \mathbf{1}$ , i.e., between a band insulator and a quantum spin Hall insulator [40–42, 59, 60].  
 279 We will not discuss further about this phenomenon except for giving an explicit  $\mathbb{Z}_2(L_z)$   
 280 oscillating diagram below in the lattice model subsection shown in Fig. 5. We emphasize  
 281 here that the exponentially decaying gap will not affect physically observable topological  
 282 phase, either for an insulating or metallic one, for a TI film with enough thickness.

283 The solution of the continuum model enlightens us to commence with the lattice model  
 284 of TI film below.

## 285 2.2 The lattice model

286 In this subsection, we ask and deal with the same question as above, but in the more  
 287 realistic lattice model. Details are presented in Appendix B.

288 The Hamiltonian of a 3D TI with nearest-neighbour hopping on cubic lattice is [17, 54]

$$\mathcal{H}_{TI} = \sum_l \Psi_l^\dagger \mathcal{M}_0 \Psi_l + \sum_{l,\mu} \left( \Psi_l^\dagger \mathcal{T}_\mu \Psi_{l+\mu} + \text{h.c.} \right), \quad (13)$$

289 where energy and hopping matrices are  $\mathcal{M}_0 = (m_0 - 2 \sum_\mu t_\mu) \beta$ ,  $\mathcal{T}_\mu = t_\mu \beta - i \frac{\lambda_\mu}{2} \alpha_\mu$ , with  
 290  $\mathbf{l}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  denoting site locations and three spatial directions, while  $\{\beta, \alpha_\mu\}$  denoting Dirac  
 291 matrices under standard Dirac representation  $\beta = \sigma_0 \tau_z$ ,  $\alpha_\mu = \sigma_\mu \tau_x$ , where Pauli matrices  
 292  $\sigma_\mu$  and  $\tau_\mu$  represent different degrees of freedom, respectively. For instance, one could  
 293 choose them to represent spin and pseudo-spin (like orbital) ones.  $\Psi_l$  represents vectorized

294 Fermionic operator at site  $l$ . Notice that when adopting a full Fourier transformation upon  
 295 all three spatial dimensions, i.e., an infinite bulk system, the Hamiltonian is transformed  
 296 into the standard modified Dirac's equation [27] on lattice  $\mathcal{H}_{TI} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{k}) \Psi_{\mathbf{k}}$  where

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = \sum_{\mu} \lambda_{\mu} \sin(k_{\mu} a_{\mu}) \alpha_{\mu} + \left[ m_0 - 4t_{\mu} \sin^2 \left( \frac{k_{\mu} a_{\mu}}{2} \right) \right] \beta, \quad (14)$$

297 whose continuum model is just an anisotropic version of Eq. (2). This model avoids  
 298 the fermion-doubling problem [29, 30] by introducing Wilson terms [34] that break chiral  
 299 symmetry explicitly for  $\mathbf{k} \neq \mathbf{0}$ .

300 Consider such a film with  $L_z$  number of sites along  $\mathbf{z}$  direction. The Fourier transfor-  
 301 mation in  $\mathbf{x}$ - $\mathbf{y}$  plane gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}_{\text{Film}} = & \sum_{l_z, \mathbf{k}} \left( \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} \mathcal{M}_0(\mathbf{k}) \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}} + \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} \mathcal{T}_z \Psi_{l_z+1, \mathbf{k}} + \text{h.c.} \right) \\ & + \sum_{l_z, \mathbf{k}} \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} H_{\parallel} \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}, \end{aligned} \quad (15)$$

302 with

$$H_{\parallel} = \lambda_{\parallel} [\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x \tau_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y \tau_x], \quad (16)$$

303 and  $\mathcal{M}_0(\mathbf{k}) = M_0(\mathbf{k}) \sigma_0 \tau_z = [m_0(\mathbf{k}) - 2t_{\perp}] \sigma_0 \tau_z$ , where

$$m_0(\mathbf{k}) = m_0 - 4t_{\parallel} \left( \sin^2 \frac{k_x a}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{k_y b}{2} \right). \quad (17)$$

304 Note that we have set  $t_x = t_y = t_{\parallel}$ ,  $t_z = t_{\perp}$ ,  $\lambda_x = \lambda_y = \lambda_{\parallel}$ ,  $\lambda_z = \lambda_{\perp}$ ,  $a = b$ .

305 The solution of lattice model [32] shares much similarity with the continuum one. The  
 306 details can be found in Appendix B as a repeat. Separating the Hamiltonian at  $\mathbf{k}$  as

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{Film}}(\mathbf{k}) = \mathcal{H}_{1d}(\mathbf{k}) + \mathcal{H}_S(\mathbf{k}), \quad (18)$$

307 where

$$\mathcal{H}_{1d}(\mathbf{k}) = \sum_{l_z} \left( \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} \mathcal{M}_0(\mathbf{k}) \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}} + \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} \mathcal{T}_z \Psi_{l_z+1, \mathbf{k}} + \text{h.c.} \right), \quad (19a)$$

$$\mathcal{H}_S(\mathbf{k}) = \sum_{l_z} \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} H_{\parallel} \Psi_{l_z, \mathbf{k}}. \quad (19b)$$

308 The eigenvalues of  $\mathcal{H}_{1d}$  can be obtained with a set of simultaneous equations below,

$$m_n = M + 2t_{\perp} \frac{\cos \xi_1 g(\xi_1) - \cos \xi_2 g(\xi_2)}{g(\xi_1) - g(\xi_2)}, \quad (20a)$$

$$\cos \xi_{\alpha} = \frac{-Mt_{\perp} + (-1)^{\alpha-1} \sqrt{M^2 t_{\perp}^2 - (t_{\perp}^2 - \lambda_{\perp}^2 / 4)(M^2 + \lambda_{\perp}^2 - m_n^2)}}{2(t_{\perp}^2 - \lambda_{\perp}^2 / 4)}, \quad (20b)$$

309 where

$$\begin{cases} M = M_0(\mathbf{k}), \\ g(\xi) = \frac{\tan(\xi(L_z + 1))/2}{\sin \xi}, \end{cases} \quad (21)$$

310 and the sign of  $\xi$  is fixed by

$$\sin \xi_{\alpha} = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \xi_{\alpha}}, \quad \alpha = 1, 2. \quad (22)$$

311 Now, different from the continuum model, the set of equations give  $L_z$  solutions  $\mathbf{m}_n(\mathbf{k}), n = 1, 2, \dots, L_z$   
 312 including one surface state and  $L_z - 1$  purely trivial bulk states, if within suitable choice  
 313 of parameters. This is essentially because now the Dirac equation is put on lattice, and  
 314 the number of solutions is constrained by finite lattice constants. And the other set of  $L_z$   
 315 masses are just the chiral partners with eigenvalues  $-\mathbf{m}_n(\mathbf{k})$ .

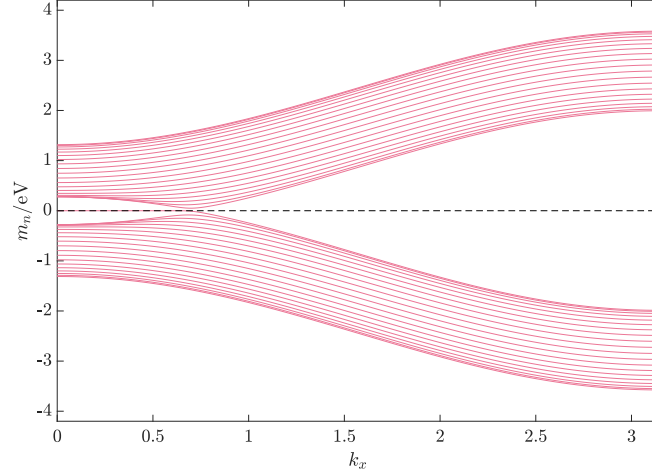


Figure 4: The momentum-dependent mass of Dirac fermions in a TI film on the lattice. Namely,  $\mathbf{m}_n(\mathbf{k}), n = 1, 2, \dots, L_z$  along  $\mathbf{k}_x$  are solved from closed equations Eq. (20) of lattice model with  $L_z = 40$ . Again, index  $n$  is assigned in the way that  $|\mathbf{m}_n(\boldsymbol{\pi}, \boldsymbol{\pi})|$  increases with  $n$ . Especially notice the sign-jump behavior that  $\text{sgn}(\mathbf{m}_n(\boldsymbol{\pi}, \boldsymbol{\pi})) = (-1)^n$ .

316 The projection basis shares the same form as with the continuum model eigenstates,  
 317 with only re-defined factor  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  (for details, refer to Appendix B or [32]). And the projection  
 318 of the TI film model offers an equivalent description as

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} [\lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y) + m_n(k)\tau_z\sigma_z], \quad (23)$$

319 as Eq. (1b), where  $2L_z$  Dirac fermions  $H = \bigoplus_{n,\chi} h_{n,\chi}(\mathbf{k})$  emerge as

$$h_{n,\chi}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y) + \chi m_n(k)\sigma_z, \quad (24)$$

320 with  $\chi = \pm$  labelling the mirror eigenvalue [33]. An example of  $\mathbf{m}_n(\mathbf{k})$  with  $L_z = 40$  is pre-  
 321 sented in Fig. 4. Among these Dirac fermions, two of them with  $\pm\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k})$  are gapless Dirac  
 322 cones with their low-energy states localized at top and bottom surfaces, while emerging  
 323 into the bulk at their high-energy away from Dirac point, and the remaining fermions are  
 324 all gapped. Notice that the same arguments about the projection as a trivial local unitary  
 325 transformation and Heaviside Theta function form of the lowest solution (see below) can  
 326 be made here, as in the continuum model.

327 For the strong topological insulator with a single Dirac cone at  $\Gamma$  point, as we consider  
 328 in the article, the lowest mass reads ( $\mathbf{t}_{\perp} > \mathbf{0}$  assumed, and the film is thick enough)

$$\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta[-m_0(k)]\mathbf{m}_0(k), \quad (25)$$

329 which shares the same form with the continuum model.

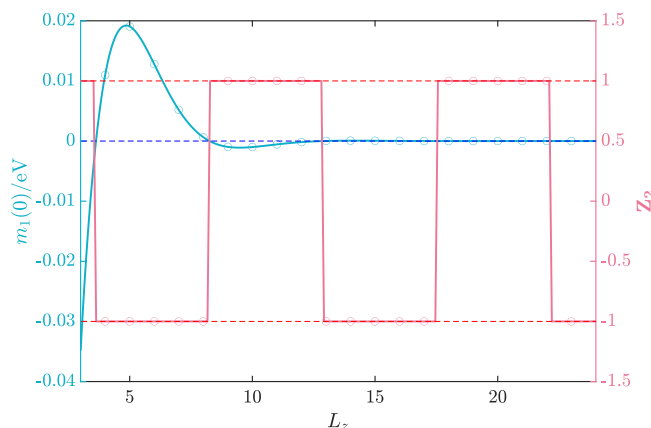


Figure 5: Finite size effect of an ultra-thin strong TI film (Dirac point at  $\Gamma$ ) in the lattice model, revealed by the exponentially decaying oscillating gap  $2\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0})$  of surface Dirac cones and the oscillating  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  index. The solid blue line of  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0})$  represents results from solving the self-consistent equations Eq. (20), while the circles are obtained from diagonalizing the TI film Hamiltonian at  $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$  directly. The  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  index is calculated from inversion symmetry indicator [64] method, and the solid red line represents index of  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  block Dirac fermions with solved  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k})$ , while circles are indices calculated from TI film Hamiltonian directly.

### 330 2.2.1 Oscillating $\mathbb{Z}_2$ invariant

331 As discussed in the continuum model case, in the ultra-thin film limit, the strong TI thin  
 332 film with a single Dirac cone at  $\Gamma$  ( $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$ ) point will show oscillating behavior between  
 333 a quantum spin Hall insulator and an ordinary insulator. The topological index of this  
 334 kind is carried out explicitly in Fig. 5, with  $\mathbb{Z}_2 = (-1)^\nu$  with  $\nu = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1}$ , and the latter  
 335 corresponds to a non-trivial 2D quantum spin Hall insulator. The mass oscillation and  
 336 the index oscillation match perfectly, as  $\mathbb{Z}_2 = -1$  ( $\nu = \mathbf{1}$ ) zones correspond to  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0}) > \mathbf{0}$ ,  
 337 so do their sign transitions (remind that  $\mathbf{m}_1(\pi, \pi) < \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{0}) > \mathbf{0}$  leads to a nontrivial  
 338 mass configuration, as to be discussed below). Notice that when attributed to the lowest  
 339  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  block in Eq. (23), there is no constraint to force  $L_z$  to be integer from Eq. (20), and in  
 340 this sense we continue the  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  block from integer  $L_z$  to a positively real one. This is why  
 341 we can do the calculation above. Again we emphasize that we will consider thick-enough  
 342 strong TI film for topological phases hereafter, and the exponentially decaying finite size  
 343 effect is physically negligible.

## 344 3 The quantum Hall conductivity of Dirac fermions

345 As stated, in both the continuum model and lattice model, the strong topological insulator  
 346 film is composed of two gapless Dirac fermions and countable gapped Dirac fermions. We  
 347 have also claimed that all the massive fermions inside are trivial, while saying nothing  
 348 about the massless two. Here in this subsection, we shall complete the basic picture of  
 349 them. Discussion here is restricted to effectively two-dimensional systems and the zero-  
 350 temperature limit.

### 3.1 In the continuum model

Our starting point is the continuum model of a two-band Dirac fermion appearing above

$$h_{\text{DF}}^{\text{C}} = \lambda \mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma} + m(\mathbf{k}) \sigma_z, \quad (26)$$

with  $\mathbf{k} = (k_x, k_y)$  and  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} = (\sigma_x, \sigma_y)$ . Notice that the mass depends on  $\mathbf{k} = |\mathbf{k}|$  and possesses a topologically trivial infinity behavior. Its Hall conductivity can be carried out by a deformed Kubo formula [27, 65], when the chemical potential  $\mu$  lies at the valence band,

$$\sigma_H = -\frac{e^2}{h} \frac{1}{4\pi} \int d^2k \Theta(\mu + d) \frac{(\partial_{k_x} d \times \partial_{k_y} d) \cdot d}{d^3}, \quad (27)$$

where  $\mathbf{d}(\mathbf{k}) = (\lambda k_x, \lambda k_y, m(\mathbf{k}))$ ,  $d = |\mathbf{d}|$ , and to reveal possible topological property, we have used the Heaviside Theta function with  $\Theta(x > 0) = 1$  and zero otherwise, as the zero-temperature Fermi-Dirac distribution. The Hall conductivity can then be carried out easily by defining

$$\cos \theta = \frac{m}{(\lambda^2 k^2 + m^2)^{1/2}}, \quad (28)$$

and notice that

$$\frac{\sigma_H}{e^2/h} = \frac{1}{2} \int_{k_F}^{+\infty} dk^2 \frac{\partial \cos \theta}{\partial k^2}, \quad (29)$$

which finally leads to

$$\sigma_H = \frac{e^2}{2h} \left[ \text{sgn}(m(+\infty)) - \frac{m(k_F)}{d(k_F)} \right], \quad (30)$$

with  $\mathbf{k}_F$  the Fermi vector determined by  $\mu = d(\mathbf{k}_F)$ , and  $\text{sgn}(\mathbf{x})$  the sign function. From this equation, three topological phases are readily to be classified. [While we have assumed Notice that we assume](#) a path connected Fermi surface, [the discussion here should be easily generalized to the Fermi surface composed of concentric circles.](#)

#### 3.1.1 Gapless/Metallic case

The first case corresponds to a metallic phase with a finite  $\mathbf{k}_F$ . If  $m(\mathbf{k}_F) = 0$ , which leaves a perfect linearized dispersion near the Fermi surface, we obtain a half-quantized Hall conductance as

$$\sigma_H(\mu | d(\mathbf{k}_F) = \lambda k_F) = \frac{e^2}{2h} \text{sgn}(m(+\infty)), \quad (31)$$

where the half-quantization is completely determined by the high-energy mass sign which may be recognized as the chirality assigned to the low-energy massless Dirac fermion near the Fermi surface. In our equivalent model, such a case exists for the  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  bands

$$h_{1,\chi} = \lambda_{\parallel} (\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) + \chi \Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k})) m_0(\mathbf{k}) \sigma_z, \quad \chi = \pm. \quad (32)$$

Since  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) = m_0 - t_{\perp} k^2$ , then by assuming  $m_0 > 0, t_{\perp} > 0$ , we have

$$\sigma_H^{1,\chi}(k_F < k_c) = -\chi \frac{e^2}{2h}, \quad (33)$$

with  $k_c = \sqrt{m_0/t_{\perp}}$  identified. For each gapless Dirac fermion, the exact half-quantization [4, 53] comes deeply from the parity ‘anomaly’ [47, 66–71], which manifests itself as an explicit symmetry breaking term at high-energy for a low-energy massless 2D Dirac fermion. To be clearer, the 2D parity symmetry is indeed an in-plane mirror symmetry [31], say

379 about  $\mathbf{x}$ , which forces  $(\mathbf{k}_x, \mathbf{k}_y) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{M}_x} (\mathbf{k}_x, -\mathbf{k}_y)$ , and in our model, the projected spin degrees  
 380 of freedom make the related unitary transformation to be  $U_{M_x} = \sigma_x$ , then the imposed  
 381 parity symmetry  $U_{M_x}^\dagger \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{k}) U_{M_x} = \mathbf{h}(\mathcal{M}_x \mathbf{k})$  stands only when  $\mathbf{k} < \mathbf{k}_c$ , which forms a parity  
 382 invariant regime (PIR) inside which the parity symmetry is respected. The parity invari-  
 383 ant regime is recognized as the low-energy zone around the Dirac point with small  $\mathbf{k}$ , and  
 384 for larger  $\mathbf{k} > \mathbf{k}_c$  recognized as the high-energy zone, the non-vanishing mass term breaks  
 385 the 2D parity symmetry explicitly, as a consequence of regulating the effective low-energy  
 386 theory [55].

### 387 3.1.2 Insulating case

388 The remaining two phases are insulating with  $\mathbf{k}_F = \mathbf{0}$  recognized when the chemical po-  
 389 tential lies inside the global insulating gap, then simply

$$\sigma_H(|\mu| < d_{\min}) = \frac{e^2}{2h} [\text{sgn}(m(+\infty)) - \text{sgn}(m(0))], \quad (34)$$

390 for a Dirac cone, where  $d_{\min} = \min(d(\mathbf{k}))$  denotes the bound of the global gap. Clearly,  
 391  $\sigma_H/(e^2/h) = \mathbf{0}, \pm \mathbf{1}$  appears, notifying trivial or non-trivial phases depending on the rel-  
 392 ative signs of low and high-energy masses, with the  $\pm \mathbf{1}$  cases identified as the Chern  
 393 insulator or equivalently, the quantum anomalous Hall effect. In our equivalent model,  
 394 one sees from Fig. 2 that all  $n \geq 2$  masses contains the same sign, and the corresponding  
 395 Dirac cones are all trivial. And we come back to the statement that in a TI film, there  
 396 are two gapless Dirac fermions with opposite half-quantized Hall conductance, while all  
 397 other bands form paired trivial massive Dirac fermions. The quantized nature of the Hall  
 398 conductance in insulating system,  $\sigma_H = -C e^2/h$ , is referred to by the famous TKNN  
 399 theorem [10], with its robustness against continuous non-gap-closing perturbations rooted  
 400 in the topological nature of  $C$  as the Chern invariant [72, 73].

### 401 3.2 In the lattice model

402 Now we turn to the lattice model with a starting Dirac Hamiltonian defined on the lattice

$$h_{\text{DF}}^L = \lambda(\sin(k_x)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y)\sigma_y) + m(\mathbf{k})\sigma_z. \quad (35)$$

403 Firstly, we notice that when  $\mathbf{m} \equiv \mathbf{0}$ , the remaining part is a naive lattice realization of single  
 404 Weyl fermion, which is strongly constrained by the Nielsen-Ninomiya theorem [29, 30].  
 405 There appear to be four connected Dirac points at  $\Gamma, X, Y, M$ , respectively. Any non-  
 406 vanishing  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$  will serve as a lattice regularization of the theory, with the only difference  
 407 as its effectiveness upon in gapping out which Dirac point. Essentially, here the difference  
 408 with a continuum model appears, say in the latter case there is only a single gapless  
 409 Dirac cone, and the infinity is usually treated by one-point compactification and the  $\mathbf{k}$ -  
 410 space is topologically equivalent to a sphere surface  $S^2$ , while on lattice the Brillouin zone  
 411 geometry as a torus  $T^2$  can contain non-trivial property on its periodic boundary. Such a  
 412 non-trivial property is exactly reflected by the existence of four Dirac points under naive  
 413 lattice realization of Dirac operator  $\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}$ . With an analogical formulation, we write

$$\sigma_H = \frac{e^2}{2h} [S_X + S_Y - S_\Gamma - S_M], \quad (36)$$

414 with  $S_{\mathbf{k}}$  as an analogy to  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})/d(\mathbf{k})$  appearing in the continuum model.  $S_{\mathbf{k}}$  becomes zero  
 415 when the chemical potential lies in the metallic states around  $\mathbf{k}$ , and over those states

416 certain symmetry constraint is imposed in a finite regime around, such as the parity sym-  
 417 metry which requires  $\mathbf{m}(\mathcal{M}_x \mathbf{k}) = -\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$ , and essentially, the imposed symmetry should  
 418 ensure that the net Berry curvature integral contributed from the regime (constrained  
 419 also by chemical potential) is zero wherever we put the Fermi level inside. On the other  
 420 hand, we recognize  $\mathbf{S}_k = \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k}))$  when Dirac point  $\mathbf{k}$  is gapped, and the Fermi level  
 421 lies inside. The formula is further classified into two cases under additional conditions.

### 422 3.2.1 Gapless/Metallic case

423 The first case corresponds to the existence of gapless Dirac fermion(s) inside a parity  
 424 invariant regime. Consider an example as a single gapless Dirac fermion at  $\Gamma$  point, let  
 425 the Fermi level lie in the symmetry constrained regime (SCR), and we recognize

$$\sigma_H(\mathbf{k}_F \subseteq \text{SCR}) = \frac{e^2}{2h} [\mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(X)) + \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(Y)) - \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(M))], \quad (37)$$

426 which is always half-quantized. Notice that  $\mathbf{k}_F = \{\mathbf{k} | d(\mathbf{k}) = \mu\}$  is now a set, representing  
 427 Fermi surface wavevectors. Also notice that unlike the case in the continuum model where  
 428 the regulator comes from only at infinity, here on the square lattice, a single gapless Dirac  
 429 fermion owns **three** regulators. At the same time, if  $\mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(X)) = \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(Y)) = \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(M))$   
 430 is recognized which makes the boundary of the Brillouin zone trivial, we get

$$\sigma_H(\mathbf{k}_F \subseteq \text{SCR}) = \frac{e^2}{2h} \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(M)). \quad (38)$$

431 In our equivalent model on lattice, the lowest two cones

$$h_{1,\chi}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y) + \chi m_1(\mathbf{k})\sigma_z, \quad (39)$$

432 satisfy the condition, with  $m_1(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k}))m_0(\mathbf{k})$  identified. Since under our model  
 433 parameter choice, it is easy to verify that  $\mathbf{sgn}(m_1(X)) = \mathbf{sgn}(m_1(Y)) = \mathbf{sgn}(m_1(M)) < 0$ ,  
 434 and we write

$$\sigma_H^{1,\chi}(m_1(\mathbf{k}_F) > 0) = -\chi \frac{e^2}{2h}, \quad (40)$$

435 inside the symmetry constrained regime which is now the parity invariant regime defined  
 436 by  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) > 0$ .

### 437 3.2.2 Insulating case

438 The second case corresponds to a globally gapped Dirac band. Now by requiring the  
 439 chemical potential to lie inside the gap, the Chern number reads

$$C = \frac{1}{2} [\mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(\Gamma)) + \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(M)) - \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(X)) - \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(Y))], \quad (41)$$

440 which ranges among  $0, \pm 1, \pm 2$ . This formula has two common versions that we will come  
 441 up with in the following. The first version is the most familiar one with a trivial Brillouin  
 442 boundary when  $\mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(X)) = \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(Y)) = \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(M))$  is recognized, and

$$C = \frac{1}{2} [\mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(\Gamma)) - \mathbf{sgn}(\mathbf{m}(M))]. \quad (42)$$

443 The mass term generating this formula, is usually written as

$$m(\mathbf{k}) = m_0 - 4t \left( \sin^2 \frac{k_x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{k_y}{2} \right), \quad (43)$$



444 with a relatively small  $|\mathbf{m}_0|$  compared to  $|\mathbf{t}|$ , and correspondingly, we have

$$C = \frac{1}{2}[\text{sgn}(\mathbf{m}_0) + \text{sgn}(\mathbf{t})], \quad (44)$$

445 which is non-trivial with unit Chern number when  $\mathbf{m}_0 \mathbf{t} > \mathbf{0}$ . And when we relax the value  
446 of  $\mathbf{m}_0$ , a better formula for this mass term is

$$C = -\frac{\text{sgn}(m(X))}{2} [\text{sgn}(m(\Gamma)) - \text{sgn}(m(M))]. \quad (45)$$

447 In our equivalent model on lattice within our parameter choice as a strong topological  
448 insulator with homogeneous in-film-plane parameters, Eq. (42) is enough to describe all  
449  $n \geq 2$  massive Dirac fermions; and since from Fig. 4, all  $\mathbf{m}_{n \geq 2}(\mathbf{k})$  do not change sign at  $\Gamma$   
450 and  $M$ , they are evidently all trivial.

### 451 3.3 A glance in proof of half-quantization

452 The proof [4, 31] for the half-quantization of a general band structure in 2D comes as  
453 follows, with a requirement of parity or time reversal symmetry at the Fermi surface.  
454 Without losing generality, we consider a connected Fermi surface. Recognizing the in-  
455 finity as one point compactifies the  $\mathbf{k}$ -space, then the existence of Fermi surface cuts the  
456 curvature integral into two parts with three boundaries where the Stokes' theorem applies

$$\frac{-2\pi\sigma_H}{e^2/h} = \oint_{\text{FS}} \mathbf{d}\mathbf{k} \cdot \text{Tr}(A^M) + \oint_{\text{FS}} \mathbf{d}\mathbf{k} \cdot \text{Tr}(A^L) + \oint_{\overline{\text{FS}}} \mathbf{d}\mathbf{k} \cdot \text{Tr}(\tilde{A}^L), \quad (46)$$

457 where  $A^M$  refers to the non-Abelian Berry connection (convention follows that  $\mathcal{A} = i \langle \mathbf{u} | \mathbf{d} | \mathbf{u} \rangle$ )  
458 formed by the metallic bands crossed by the Fermi surface with parity or time-reversal  
459 symmetry, while  $A^L$  refers to connection of bands with lower energy, on the boundary  
460 formed by  $\mathbf{k}_F$ . Essentially, the last two terms are phase integrals around one mutual  
461 boundary with opposite orientations, which will contribute an integer value [74–76]  $2\pi C$ .  
462 For the first term, requiring the 2D parity (i.e., mirror) symmetry at the Fermi surface  
463 leads to a local unitary transformation  $U_k^M$  relating states at parity-symmetric points,  
464 which leads to

$$A_\mu^M(\mathbf{k}) = i(U_k^M)^\dagger \partial_{k_\mu} U_k^M + (U_k^M)^\dagger A_\nu^M(\mathcal{M}\mathbf{k}) U_k^M J_{\nu\mu}, \quad (47)$$

465 where  $J_{\nu\mu} = \partial(\mathcal{M}\mathbf{k})_\nu / \partial k_\mu$  is the Jacobian matrix with  $\det(\mathbf{J}) = -1$ . And similarly,  
466 requiring time reversal at Fermi surface leads to

$$A_\mu^M(\mathbf{k}) = i(U_k^T)^\dagger \partial_{k_\mu} U_k^T - (U_k^T)^\dagger A_\mu^M(-\mathbf{k}) U_k^T, \quad (48)$$

467 where  $U_k^T$  is the unitary matrix relating time reversal points satisfying that  $U_k^T = -(U_{-\mathbf{k}}^T)^T$ .  
468 Performing Berry phase loop integral of both sides leads to, for both symmetry restricted  
469 cases,

$$\oint_{\text{FS}} \mathbf{d}\mathbf{k} \cdot \text{Tr}(A^M) = \frac{i}{2} \oint_{\text{FS}} \mathbf{d}\mathbf{k} \cdot \text{Tr}(U_k^\dagger \nabla_k U_k) = \pi N. \quad (49)$$

470 Combining three terms gives

$$\sigma_H = -\frac{e^2}{h} \left( C + \frac{N}{2} \right), \quad (50)$$

471 with both  $C$  and  $N$  integers. The proof here can be easily generalized to the lattice model,  
472 by simply replacing the base manifold with a torus, and to the case when the Fermi surface

473 consists of several separately connected components, with the curvature integral cut into  
474 more parts determined by Fermi surface position in  $\mathbf{k}$ -space.

475 When bands related to  $\mathbf{C}$  and  $\mathbf{N}$  are fully separated, the former can be recognized as  
476 the Chern number contributed from these fully occupied bands, while the latter reduces  
477 to a quantized Fermi surface loop integral over metallic bands [77–80]. We would like to  
478 emphasize here that even though reduced to cumulating low-energy (refer to Fermi surface  
479 here) quantities, the  $\mathbf{N}$  index in our analysis has to be determined by the properties of far  
480 Fermi sea, i.e., high-energy regime. This is because the application of the Stokes theorem,  
481 which turns the Fermi sea volume integral over Berry curvature into Fermi surface line  
482 integral over Berry phase, requires a self-consistent gauge choice of the vector field. This  
483 gauge choice must not contain any singularities in the integrated volume, in order to ensure  
484 the existence of a non-singular gauge field throughout the volume.

### 485 3.4 View from field theory

486 The gapless Dirac fermion in a strong topological insulator film can be written as  $\mathcal{H}_0(\mathbf{k}) =$   
487  $\lambda_{\parallel} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot (\sin k_x, \sin k_y) + m(\mathbf{k}) \sigma_z$  with  $m(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k})) m_0(\mathbf{k})$  identified, which is con-  
488 structed on lattice with finite 2D Brillouin zone. The time-ordered Green function is  
489  $\mathcal{G}_0(\mathbf{k}) = [\omega - \mathbf{d} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma} (1 - i\eta)]^{-1}$  where  $k_{\mu} = (\omega, \mathbf{k})_{\mu}$ ,  $\mathbf{d}(\mathbf{k}) = (\lambda_{\parallel} \sin k_x, \lambda \sin k_y, m(\mathbf{k}))$  and  
490  $\eta$  is infinitesimally small quantity. In order to study a linear electromagnetic response in  
491 the film system, we include the electromagnetic fields  $\mathcal{A}$  which are coupled to the current  
492 through the interaction term  $\mathcal{H}_{\text{gauge}} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathcal{A}$ . The electric current density operator in the  
493 momentum space is given by  $\mathbf{j} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \mathcal{G}_0^{-1}(\mathbf{k})$ . With the electromagnetic fields, the action  
494 reads ( $e = \hbar = 1$ )

$$S = \int_{\mathbf{k}} \psi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\dagger} \mathcal{G}_0^{-1}(\mathbf{k}) \psi_{\mathbf{k}} + \int_{\mathbf{k}} \int_{\mathbf{q}} \mathcal{A}^{\mu}(\mathbf{q}) \psi_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{q}/2}^{\dagger} \partial_{k_{\mu}} \mathcal{G}_0^{-1}(\mathbf{k}) \psi_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{q}/2}, \quad (51)$$

495 where  $\int_{\mathbf{k}} = \int \frac{d\omega}{2\pi} \int_{\text{BZ}} \frac{d^2k}{(2\pi)^2}$  and the momentum  $\mathbf{k}$  integral is performed over the whole 2D  
496 Brillouin zone. By integrating out the fermions in the action, the effective action for gauge  
497 fields  $\mathcal{S}_{\text{eff}}[\mathcal{A}]$  can be obtained by expanding to the quadratic order

$$\mathcal{S}_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{d^3q}{(2\pi)^3} \mathcal{A}^{\mu}(-\mathbf{q}) \Pi_{\mu\nu}(\mathbf{q}) \mathcal{A}^{\nu}(\mathbf{q}). \quad (52)$$

498 where  $\mu, \nu$  run over the space-time indices  $(0, 1, 2)$  with the vacuum polarization operator  
499 defined as

$$i\Pi_{\mu\nu}(\mathbf{q}) = \int \frac{d^3k}{(2\pi)^3} \text{Tr}[\partial_{k_{\mu}} \mathcal{G}_0^{-1}(\mathbf{k}) \mathcal{G}_0(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}/2) \partial_{k_{\nu}} \mathcal{G}_0^{-1}(\mathbf{k}) \mathcal{G}_0(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{q}/2)], \quad (53)$$

500 There is no divergence in  $\Pi_{\mu\nu}$  as the momentum integral is performed over a finite Brillouin  
501 zone due to the lattice regularization. The antisymmetric terms  $\Pi_{\mu\nu}^A(\mathbf{q})$  can be evaluated  
502 as follows

$$\Pi_{\mu\nu}^A = \frac{1}{2\pi} \epsilon_{\mu\nu\zeta} q^{\zeta} C, \quad (54)$$

503 with Chern number in the case following definition that

$$C = \int_{\text{BZ}} \frac{d^2k}{4\pi} \hat{\mathbf{d}} \cdot \partial_{k_x} \hat{\mathbf{d}} \times \partial_{k_y} \hat{\mathbf{d}}, \quad (55)$$

504 where  $\epsilon_{\mu\nu\zeta}$  is Levi-Civita symbol and  $\hat{\mathbf{d}} = \mathbf{d}/|\mathbf{d}|$ . Finally, we obtain the Chern-Simons  
 505 theory for  $\mathcal{A}_\mu$

$$\mathcal{S}_{\text{eff}}[\mathcal{A}] = \frac{C}{2\pi} \int d^3x \epsilon^{\mu\nu\zeta} \mathcal{A}_\mu \partial_\zeta \mathcal{A}_\nu. \quad (56)$$

506 For the lattice Hamiltonian  $\mathcal{H}_0(\mathbf{k})$ , we have  $C = -\frac{\text{sgn}(m(\pi, \pi))}{2}$  which is a half-integer with  
 507 its sign determined by the sign of  $\mathbf{m}(\pi, \pi)$ . Restoring physical units, the Chern-Simons  
 508 term corresponds a half quantum Hall effect

$$\langle j^\nu \rangle = \frac{\delta \mathcal{S}_{\text{eff}}}{\delta \mathcal{A}_\nu} = \frac{\text{sgn}(m(\pi, \pi))}{2} \frac{e^2}{h} \epsilon^{\mu\nu\zeta} \partial_\zeta \mathcal{A}_\mu. \quad (57)$$

509 Notice that upon DC linear response, the result is strict.

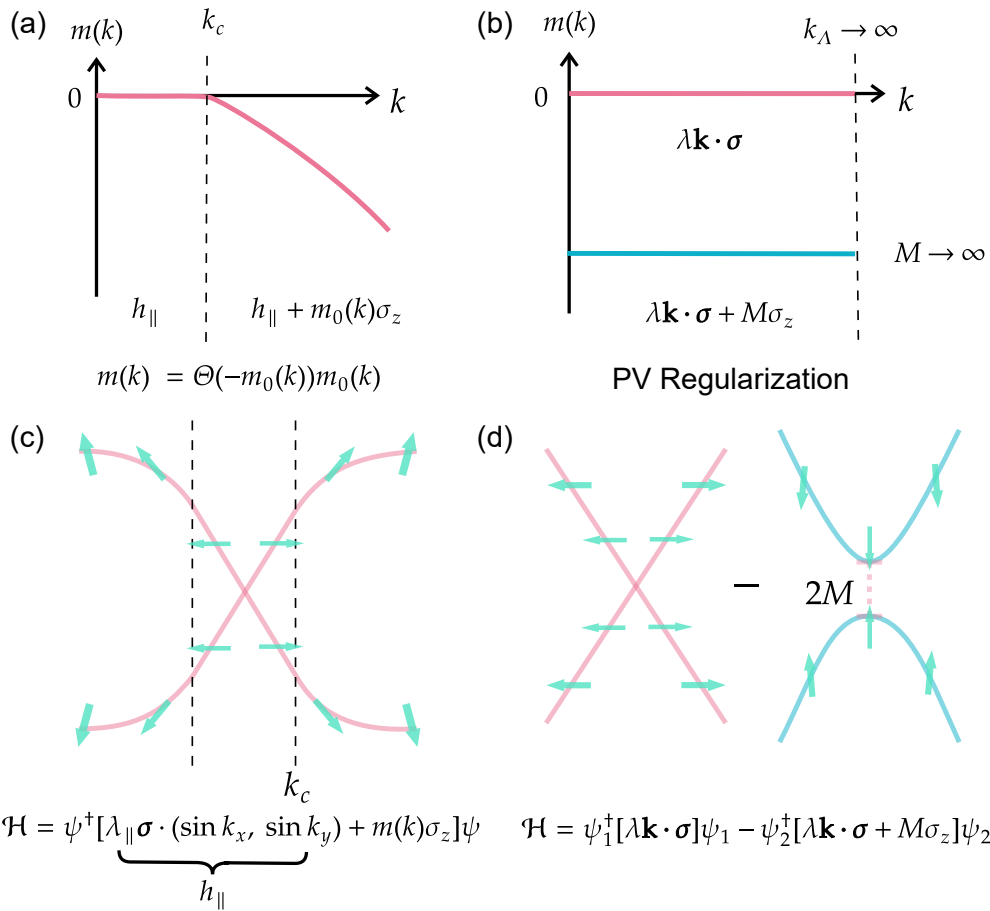


Figure 6: Regulated gapless Dirac fermion on lattice and by Pauli-Villars regularization. (a) Momentum dependent mass of regulated gapless Dirac fermion on lattice,  $\mathbf{k}_c$  is defined by  $\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{0}$ , which splits the mass and the dispersion in (c) of the Dirac fermion into two regions, low-energy part with  $\mathbf{k} < \mathbf{k}_c$  and high-energy part with  $\mathbf{k} > \mathbf{k}_c$ . (b) Mass of massless Dirac fermion and of its regulator partner by Pauli-Villars treatment. (c) Dispersion of regulated gapless Dirac fermion on lattice with spin orientation. (d) Dispersion of double Dirac fermions, one massless and one massive under Pauli-Villars regularization, and to obtain convergent result, contributions from two fermions should be subtracted.

510 If we now focus on the low-energy effective model of the lattice four-band Hamiltonian  
 511 by neglecting higher energy states ( $\propto m(\mathbf{k})$ ), which can be expressed as  $\mathcal{H}_0^{\text{low}}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel}(k_x \boldsymbol{\sigma}_1 + k_y \boldsymbol{\sigma}_2)$ .

512 There is a linear ultraviolet divergence in  $\Pi_{\mu\nu}(\mathbf{q})$  which should be regularized by Pauli-  
 513 Villars method in a gauge-invariant way. In the Pauli-Villars regularization approach, we  
 514 need to introduce a second Dirac field mass  $M\sigma_3$ . In the limit ( $M \rightarrow \infty$ ), the regulator  
 515 field decouples from the theory, which removes the divergence in  $\Pi_{\mu\nu}$ , leaving a finite  
 516 contribution for the crossed polarization tensor  $\Pi_{\mu\nu} = \frac{\text{sgn}(M)}{4\pi} \epsilon_{\mu\nu\zeta} \mathbf{q}^\zeta$ . This also induces a  
 517 Chern-Simons term and corresponds to a half-quantum Hall effect.

518 The comparison of mass configuration and band dispersion of two methods is shown in  
 519 Fig. 6. The advantage of our approach for lattice realization single gapless Dirac fermion  
 520 lies in its realism, as it appears naturally in a topological insulator film, and also in its  
 521 conciseness of expressing topological properties with a single analytical mass term. The  
 522 price here, however, is to introduce symmetry-breaking term at high-energy zone explicitly,  
 523 and the form of Theta function (or its mollifier) will introduce long-range hopping in real  
 524 space.

### 525 3.5 Unexchangeable limits

526 In the usual context of quantum field theory, a massive  $(2+1)$ -D Dirac fermion bears  
 527 half-quantized Hall conductivity when the chemical potential lies inside the gap, even if  
 528 the mass is infinitesimally small [14, 68, 70], under which one gets in fact a Dirac point.  
 529 Such a picture relies on the limit sequence that one firstly takes  $\mu \rightarrow 0$ , and then the mass  
 530  $m \rightarrow 0$ , while on the other hand, once the sequence is inverted, say at first place, one stays  
 531 at finite chemical potential  $\mu$  and takes  $m \rightarrow 0$ , which leads to zero Hall conductivity, one  
 532 gets constant zero Hall plateau when pushing  $\mu \rightarrow 0$ . And in this sense one realizes that  
 533 a gapless Dirac point is singular, and different approaches to reach it will lead to different  
 534 and even contradictory pictures.

535 The same thing happens in our model. Consider now a gapless Dirac fermion is  
 536 perturbed by a small constant mass term

$$h = \lambda_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) + [\delta m + \Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k}))m_0(\mathbf{k})]\sigma_z, \quad (58)$$

537 where for simplicity we discuss the continuum model here. Given  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) = m_0 - b\mathbf{k}^2$  with  
 538  $m_0 b > 0$ , by Eq. (30) we have

$$\sigma_H = -\frac{e^2}{2h} \left[ \text{sgn}(b) + \frac{\delta m}{\sqrt{\lambda_{\parallel}^2 k_F^2 + \delta m^2}} \right], \quad (59)$$

539 where a small  $\mu$  near the Dirac point is assumed. The  $\mathbf{k}_F$  refers to the Fermi wavevector de-  
 540 fined by  $\mu = -\sqrt{\lambda_{\parallel}^2 k_F^2 + \delta m^2}$ , which lies inside the valence band and satisfies  $m_0(\mathbf{k}_F) > 0$ .  
 541 Now the two different limits for the Hall conductivity of the gapless Dirac cone in the case  
 542 read

$$\lim_{\delta m \rightarrow 0} \lim_{\mu \rightarrow 0} \sigma_H = -\frac{e^2}{2h} [\text{sgn}(b) + \text{sgn}(\delta m)], \quad (60a)$$

$$\lim_{\mu \rightarrow 0} \lim_{\delta m \rightarrow 0} \sigma_H = -\frac{e^2}{2h} \text{sgn}(b), \quad (60b)$$

543 i.e., first pushing chemical potential to zero and then pushing  $\delta m$  to zero leads to an  
 544 undefined limit that depends on the limit direction  $\delta m$  takes (positive or negative), while  
 545 an admittedly infinitesimal mass gap will not affect the half-quantization of the gapless  
 546 Dirac cone by subsequent Fermi level tuning — not only to  $\mu \rightarrow 0$  but for all possible

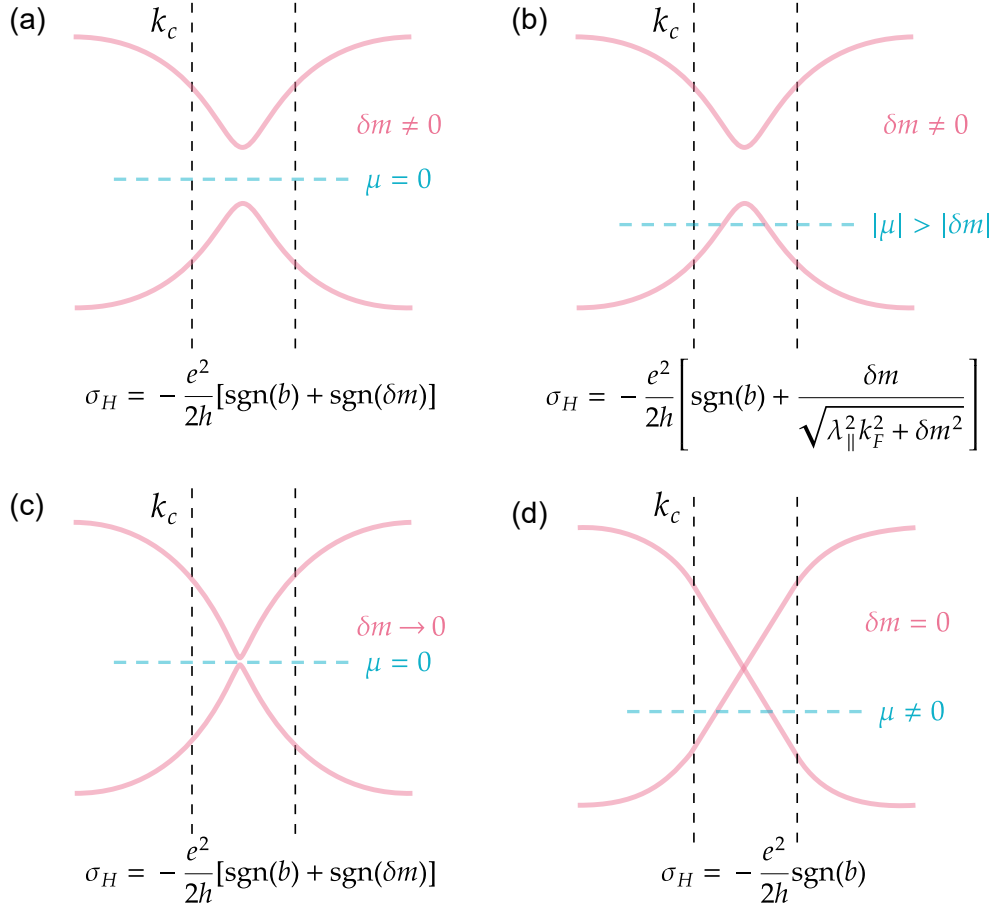


Figure 7: Schematic diagrams illustrating the limits in calculating the Hall conductivity of a regulated gapless Dirac fermion are shown below. In these diagrams,  $\mathbf{k}_c = \sqrt{m_0/b}$ . (a) Initially tuning the chemical potential to  $\mu = 0$  leads to integer quantized Hall conductivity. (b) Initially adjusting the chemical potential finite inside the valence band with Fermi wavevector  $\mathbf{k}_F < \mathbf{k}_c$  results in unquantized Hall conductivity asymptotically proportional to  $\delta m/k_F$ . (c) Continuing from (a), pushing the small gap  $\delta m \rightarrow 0$  while pinning the chemical potential at  $\mu = 0$  leaves the integer of the quantized Hall conductivity invariant. (d) Continuing from (b), pushing the small gap  $\delta m \rightarrow 0$  while keeping the finite chemical potential inside the valence band with  $\mathbf{k}_F < \mathbf{k}_c$  leads to half-quantized Hall conductivity of a gapless Dirac fermion, with the sign of the Hall conductivity determined by its chirality or equivalently its high-energy mass sign.

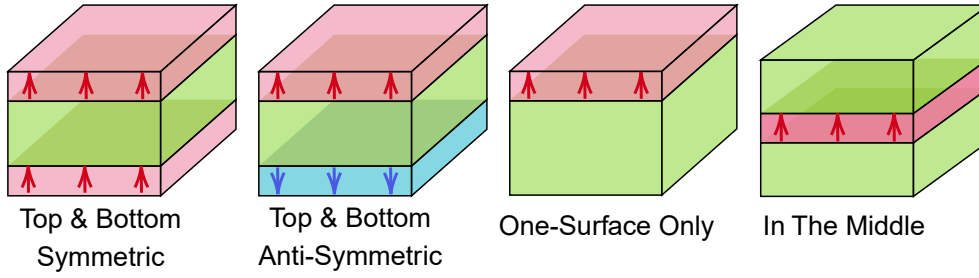


Figure 8: Several basic representative magnetic topological insulator heterostructures. From left to right: Zeeman field at top and bottom surfaces with parallel and antiparallel polarizations, at top surface and in the middle only, corresponding to basic topological phases in magnetic topological insulator film as Chern insulator, axion insulator, half-quantized anomalous Hall effect, and metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect, respectively. We use color and its gradation to emphasize the direction and strength of the Zeeman field.

547 Fermi wavevectors that lie inside the parity invariant regime [31] defined by  $\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k}) > \mathbf{0}$ .  
 548 The corresponding schematic diagram illustrating the sequential limit-taking processes  
 549 upon evaluating the Hall conductivity of a regulated gapless Dirac fermion is presented  
 550 in Fig. 7. In reality, which limit the measured Hall conductance takes has to depend on  
 551 specific situation of the system, while for the Dirac point emerged in a purely magnetic  
 552 TI, the second perspective may be deemed more realistic.

## 553 4 Magnetic and orbital fields in topological insulator films

554 In this section we consider additional elements, such as exchange interaction, gate-voltage  
 555 and orbital orders, to play their roles in the topological insulator film at the mean-field  
 556 level. We identify the mean field to be  $\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{l}_z) \sigma_\mu \tau_\nu$ , with single in plane wavevector and  
 557 out of plane position dependence, and transform the field into the Dirac fermion represen-  
 558 tation. For instance, an induced  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field  $V_z(\mathbf{l}_z) \sigma_z \tau_0$  with solely  $\mathbf{z}$ -dependence and  
 559 intrinsic spin-orbital coupling  $H_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k})$  that only depends on  $\mathbf{k}$  are two special cases under  
 560 the formulation. For our interest, we will mainly consider magnetic exchange interaction  
 561 that has been approximated to affect as an effectively mean-field Zeeman field [81] along  $\mathbf{z}$   
 562 direction, and transformation over other spin and orbital related fields are discussed and  
 563 summarized later.

### 564 4.1 Magnetism polarized along $\mathbf{z}$ direction

565 The stated mean  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field is assumed to be uniform intralayer while varies with  $\mathbf{l}_z$ ,  
 566 and that is to say [32],

$$v_z(\mathbf{k}) = \sum_{\mathbf{l}_z, k} \Psi_{\mathbf{l}_z, k}^\dagger V_Z(\mathbf{l}_z) \Psi_{\mathbf{l}_z, k}, \quad (61)$$

567 where

$$V_Z(\mathbf{l}_z) \equiv V_z(\mathbf{l}_z) \sigma_z \tau_0, \quad (62)$$

568 which acts on spin  $\mathbf{z}$ . For several schematic examples with different Zeeman configura-  
 569 tions, see Fig. 8. Its equivalent action by projection  $\langle \Phi_m^n | V_Z | \Phi_{m'}^{n'} \rangle$  ( $m, m' = 1, 2, 3, 4$ ;  
 570  $n, n' = 1, \dots, L_z$ ) reads

$$\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{k}) = (\mathbf{I}_S(\mathbf{k}) \tau_0 - \mathbf{I}_A(\mathbf{k}) \tau_y) \sigma_z. \quad (63)$$

571 In the expression, two projected Hermitian matrices  $\mathbf{I}_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$  have been defined with ele-  
572 ments

$$I_S^{nn'} = |C_n C_{n'}| \sum_{l_z} V_z(l_z) [\lambda_{\perp}^2 (f_+^n)^* f_+^{n'} + t_{\perp}^2 \eta^n \eta^{n'} (f_-^n)^* f_-^{n'}] = (I_S^{n'n})^*, \quad (64a)$$

$$iI_A^{nn'} = i|C_n C_{n'}| \sum_{l_z} V_z(l_z) \lambda_{\perp} t_{\perp} [\eta^{n'} (f_+^n)^* f_-^{n'} + \eta^n (f_-^n)^* f_+^{n'}] = -i(I_A^{n'n})^*, \quad (64b)$$

573 where  $\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{n}' = \mathbf{1}, \dots, L_z$ . Notice that  $\mathbf{I}_{S/A}$  is non-vanishing only when the symmetric/antisymmetric  
574 component of  $\mathbf{V}_z$  is non-zero. Our formula then illustrates that the Zeeman field in a TI  
575 film is brought into two classes by the discrete parity or mirror symmetry, with  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{A})$  la-  
576 belling the part respects (disrespects) this symmetry. Bring the transformed Zeeman term  
577 into multi-Dirac fermions representation, and we obtain

$$H^V = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} [\lambda_{\parallel} (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + m_n(k) \tau_z \sigma_z] + (I_S(k) \tau_0 - I_A(k) \tau_y) \sigma_z. \quad (65)$$

578 Under the local unitary transformation, the Zeeman field in TI film undergoes a trans-  
579 formation into the  $\mathbf{I}$  matrices, which act as generalized Higgs fields in matrix form, gener-  
580 ating mass through the Yukawa-like couplings among Dirac fermions in the film [55, 82].  
581 This phenomenon occurs precisely due to the fact that the projected Zeeman terms still  
582 act on spin- $\mathbf{z}$  component, similar to how masses affect the system. The emergence of a  
583 non-vanishing Higgs expectation value is closely associated with the establishment of the  
584 magnetic order in the system, either by intrinsic spontaneous magnetization or a proximate  
585 magnetic field.

586 A closer look then classifies this action into three aspects. Firstly, the intra-Dirac cone  
587 elements  $I_S^{nn}$  tell how the Zeeman field directly modifies the mass term  $m_n$ , and due to  
588 the trace invariance under unitary transformation, such a direct modification is significant  
589 in understanding the impact of the Zeeman field on the overall mass generation process.  
590 Secondly, the intra-block inter-Dirac cone elements  $I_A^{nn}$  couple the two mirror-symmetric  
591 Dirac fermions with the same  $\mathbf{n}$ -label together, and force them to recombine into two new  
592 Dirac fermions that break the mirror symmetry. Finally, the general inter-block elements  
593  $I_{S/A}^{nn'} (\mathbf{n} \neq \mathbf{n}')$  couple Dirac cones with different  $\mathbf{n}$ -labels. Nevertheless, since the linear  
594 winding part of Dirac fermions in our equivalent TI film model (see Eq. (65)) is identity in  
595 subspace spanned by  $\mathbf{n}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ , the total effect of the projected Zeeman term is to modify  
596 the mass terms, i.e.,

$$\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{k}) \sigma_z = \left[ \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} m_n \tau_z + I_S \tau_0 - I_A \tau_y \right] (\mathbf{k}) \sigma_z, \quad (66)$$

597 and further diagonalization of this total mass part will give another set of  $2L_z$  mass terms  
598 without affecting the winding part, i.e.,

$$\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{k}) \xrightarrow{\text{diagonalization}} \bigoplus_{n=1}^{2L_z} \tilde{m}_n(\mathbf{k}), \quad (67)$$

599 and accordingly, we can write down the Dirac fermion Hamiltonian under Zeeman field as

$$\tilde{H}(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{2L_z} [\lambda_{\parallel} (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + \tilde{m}_n(\mathbf{k}) \sigma_z], \quad (68)$$

600 which describes the  $2\mathbf{L}_z$  Dirac fermions in a magnetic topological insulator film. Notice  
 601 that the Zeeman term alters the masses of Dirac fermions thus their topological properties,  
 602 which is the origin of the fruitful magnetic topological phases in the system.

603 The formula and discussion above are general and applies for any  $\mathbf{z}$ -varying Zeeman  
 604 configurations. For our consideration here, we separately discuss main cases.

#### 605 4.1.1 Uniform field strength

606 In this case  $\mathbf{V}_z(\mathbf{l}_z) \equiv \mathbf{V}$  for any  $\mathbf{l}_z$ , and it is easy to check out that

$$\mathbf{I}_S^{nn'} = V\delta_{nn'}, \quad (69a)$$

$$\mathbf{I}_A^{nn'} = \mathbf{0}, \quad (69b)$$

607 which offers us with an exact projection without further diagonalization as

$$H^V(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} [\lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y) + (m_n(k)\tau_z + V\tau_0)\sigma_z] = h_{n,\chi}^V(\mathbf{k}), \quad (70)$$

608 where each sub-block

$$h_{n,\chi}^V(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y) + (\chi m_n(k) + V)\sigma_z, \quad (71)$$

609 describes a Dirac fermion of TI film modified by a uniform Zeeman splitting  $\mathbf{V}$ . This  
 610 formula serves as a clear physical picture to illustrate the formation of higher Chern  
 611 number in TI film, with multi-sub-bands inversion [83] generated by the direct Higgs  
 612 coupling  $\mathbf{V}$ , as we shall illustrate in the section thereafter.

#### 613 4.1.2 Weak Zeeman field

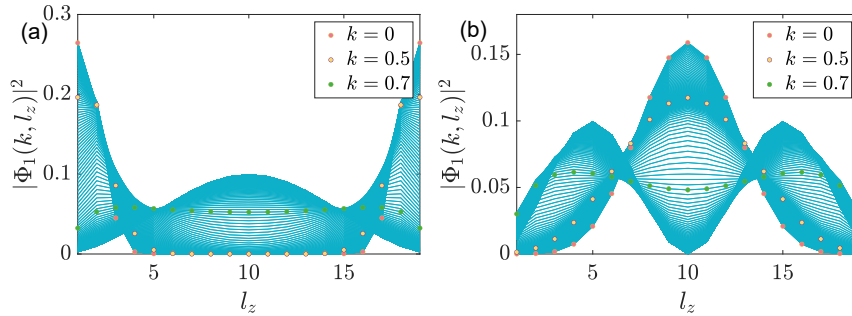


Figure 9: Basis wavefunction distribution along  $\mathbf{z}$  for (a)  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  and (b)  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{2}$ ,  
 varying from  $\mathbf{k}_x = \mathbf{0}$  to  $\mathbf{k}_x = \pi$  with  $\mathbf{k}_y = \mathbf{0}$ . Dots in purple light, yellow and  
 green represent wavefunction at  $\mathbf{k}_x = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{k}_x = \mathbf{0.5}$  and  $\mathbf{k}_x = \mathbf{0.7}$ , respectively.  
 Total layer number  $L_z = 19$ .

614 When a weak Zeeman field, whose strength is comparably small to major parameters  
 615 in topological insulator, especially, the bulk gap  $\mathbf{m}_0$ , is applied to the topological insulator  
 616 film system, its effective Hamiltonian can be obtained by considering only  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}' = \mathbf{1}$   
 617 elements in the projected matrix as a cut-off approximation. The reason why we can do  
 618 this lies in the basis wavefunction distribution along  $\mathbf{z}$ -direction. As revealed in Fig. 9,  
 619 where we have presented  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  basis wavefunction distribution for the strong topological  
 620 insulator with a single Dirac cone at  $\Gamma$ , together with  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{2}$  basis wavefunction distribution  
 621 as a representative for higher states, the surface state and higher states have little overlap



622 in the low-energy zone (near Dirac cone, in our case the parity-invariant regime [31] around  
 623  $\Gamma$  point, i.e., small  $\mathbf{k}$  area), which makes the overlap integral  $I_{S/A}^{1,n \geq 2}$  approach zero in the  
 624 regime. This tells that the low-energy behavior of the system under weak Zeeman field  
 625 is dominated by only  $I_{S/A}^{1,1}$  terms. And when we turn to high-energy part, the effective  
 626 Hamiltonian for  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  is dominated by the non-vanishing mass term  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k})$  since Zeeman  
 627 integrals are all perturbative quantities in the case. What is more, since  $\mathbf{n} \geq \mathbf{2}$  bands are  
 628 naturally gapped with minimal gap  $\mathbf{m}_0$ , weak Zeeman field has no prominent influence to  
 629 them. Based on the picture above, it suffices that we only consider  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  block with  $\mathbf{m}_1(\mathbf{k})$   
 630 and preserve  $I_{S/A}^{1,1}$  as the influence (mass-)source at low energy. This procedure is equivalent  
 631 to a cut-off approximation. Notice that since low-energy surface states distribute mainly  
 632 at two surfaces, Zeeman field at these two zones should play the major role.

633 Now we ignore  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  index and write

$$\begin{cases} I_S(\mathbf{k}) &= \langle \Phi_1(\mathbf{k}) | V_Z | \Phi_1(\mathbf{k}) \rangle \\ iI_A(\mathbf{k}) &= \langle \Phi_1(\mathbf{k}) | V_Z | \Phi_3(\mathbf{k}) \rangle \end{cases}, \quad (72)$$

634 which varies with wavevector  $\mathbf{k}$ , then by utilizing basis solutions above we have

$$I_S = |C|^2 \sum_{l_z} V_S(l_z) [\lambda_{\perp}^2 |f_+|^2 + t_{\perp}^2 \eta^2 |f_-|^2], \quad (73a)$$

$$iI_A = i|C|^2 \sum_{l_z} V_A(l_z) \lambda_{\perp} t_{\perp} 2\eta \operatorname{Re}[(f_+)^* f_-], \quad (73b)$$

635 respecting (anti-)symmetric part projection of Zeeman field to  $\mathbf{z}$  as

$$V_{S/A}(l_z) = \frac{V_z(l_z) \pm V_z(-l_z)}{2}. \quad (74)$$

636 Note that  $I_{S/A}$  are real. The effective Hamiltonian for Zeeman term then reads

$$V_{\text{EFF}}(\mathbf{k}) = (I_S(\mathbf{k})\tau_0 - I_A(\mathbf{k})\tau_y)\sigma_z. \quad (75)$$

637 Adding this term to the lowest four-band model leads to

$$H_{\text{EFF}} = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y a)\sigma_y) + \mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})\tau_z\sigma_z + I_S(\mathbf{k})\tau_0\sigma_z - I_A(\mathbf{k})\tau_y\sigma_z, \quad (76)$$

638 where  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta(-\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k}))\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k})$  for thick-enough film, while  $I_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$  are  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman-related  
 639 integrals dependent on  $\mathbf{k}$ . This effective Hamiltonian serves as the starting point for  
 640 analyzing magnetic phases in a topological insulator film within weak Zeeman regime, and  
 641 we should confine the Zeeman distribution to mainly stay at the top and bottom surfaces  
 642 to make the best use of it.

643 Notice that this Hamiltonian for the lowest surface bands is written under the (mirror)  
 644 symmetric basis, and it is actually equivalent to a generalization of the commonly utilized  
 645 four-band surface state Hamiltonian [48, 84], which treats the top and bottom surfaces as  
 646 two fundamental degrees of freedom. To show this, we introduce a two-step unitary trans-  
 647 formation  $U = U_1 U_2$  with  $U_1 = e^{i\pi\tau_y\sigma_z/4}$  and  $U_2 = e^{-i\pi\tau_x/4}$ , which combines the mirror  
 648 symmetric basis and transforms the Hamiltonian into the ‘surface state representation’ as

$$\begin{aligned} H_S &= U^\dagger H_{\text{EFF}} U \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_y - \sin(k_y a)\sigma_x) + I_+(\mathbf{k})\sigma_z & m(\mathbf{k}) \\ m(\mathbf{k}) & \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_y - \sin(k_y a)\sigma_x) + I_-(\mathbf{k})\sigma_z \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \quad (77)$$

649 with  $I_{\pm} = I_S \pm I_A$ . When  $\mathbf{k} < \mathbf{k}_c$  with the projecting basis composing of surface states,  
 650  $I_+$  and  $I_-$  can be recognized approximately as the Zeeman field strengths at top and  
 651 bottom, respectively. This Hamiltonian utilizes the same Dirac matrices as the usual  
 652 four-band surface state Hamiltonian, but includes  $\mathbf{k}$ -dependent projected Zeeman terms  
 653  $I_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$  and mass term  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$ . The low-energy form  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{0})$  is commonly referred to as the  
 654 finite-size coupling between the top and bottom surface states in an ultra-thin film. For  
 655 a sufficiently thick film, the  $\mathbf{k}$ -dependence of this mass term becomes crucial, since at low  
 656 energies it is zero and offers us two well-separated surface states localized at the top and  
 657 bottom surfaces, while at high energies it tells us that the surface bands will inevitably  
 658 mix together, rendering the 'top' and 'bottom' labels ineffective as quantum numbers in  
 659 this much broader zone. This observation is consistent with the wavefunction distribution  
 660 in Fig. 9(a), where the low-energy surface states are predominantly localized on the top  
 661 and bottom surfaces, whereas the high-energy states spread into the bulk. As a result, a  
 662 well-defined Chern number cannot be assigned to a single surface but must instead involve  
 663 contributions from bulk states. Furthermore, as we have discussed, the Theta function  
 664 form of the lowest mass term  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$  differs from the conventional approach, which assumes  
 665 a mass term of the form  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_0 + \mathbf{b}\mathbf{k}^2$  similar to the bulk band. The usual choice only restores  
 666 parity symmetry near  $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$  as  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_0$  goes to zero, and fails to fully capture the topological  
 667 nature of the surface gapless Dirac fermion that contains parity symmetry in a finite but  
 668 much larger area by  $\mathbf{k} < \mathbf{k}_c$ .

669 **Effective mass treatment** Diagonalization of the mass part in the weak Zeeman field case  
 670 shows much less complexity than that in Eq. (67), and is accessible analytically. A careful  
 671 look on Eq. (76) tells that we can treat all the latter-three terms as mass terms, since by  
 672  $\tau$ -space diagonalization

$$U_M^\dagger [m\tau_z + I_S\tau_0 - I_A\tau_y] U_M = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{m}_+ & \\ & \tilde{m}_- \end{pmatrix}, \quad (78)$$

673 where the defined unitary matrix reads

$$U_M = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} i\text{sgn}(I_A)\sqrt{1+\frac{m}{M}} & \sqrt{1-\frac{m}{M}} \\ \sqrt{1-\frac{m}{M}} & i\text{sgn}(I_A)\sqrt{1+\frac{m}{M}} \end{pmatrix}, \quad (79)$$

674 with  $M(\mathbf{k}) = \sqrt{m^2(\mathbf{k}) + I_A^2(\mathbf{k})}$ , we can write  $\tilde{H}_{\text{EFF}} = \oplus_{\chi=\pm} \tilde{H}_\chi$  with

$$\tilde{H}_\chi = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y a)\sigma_y) + \tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{k})\sigma_z, \quad (80)$$

675 where the effective mass is defined as

$$\tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{k}) \equiv I_S(\mathbf{k}) + \chi \sqrt{m^2(\mathbf{k}) + I_A^2(\mathbf{k})}. \quad (81)$$

676 This equation illustrates minimally the mass generation brought by the matrix form Higgs  
 677 fields, which are reduced into merely two components  $I_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$  here. The ultimate effect  
 678 given by the Zeeman field action to the system is reduced to a correction of the Dirac  
 679 mass term, which is responsible for the possible non-trivial topology of the system. The  
 680 treatment here relies on the sign invariance of  $I_A$  inside the parity invariant regime, which  
 681 ensures the global gauge consistency for the transformation.

682 Notice that the gap is now determined by

$$\Delta_\chi = 2|\tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{0})| = 2|I_S(\mathbf{0}) + \chi|I_A(\mathbf{0})||, \quad (82)$$

683 which is non-zero (gapped) as long as  $|I_S(\mathbf{0})| \neq |I_A(\mathbf{0})|$ . The  $\chi$ -Chern number, according  
 684 to Eq. (42), for each gapped surface state is written as

$$C_\chi = \frac{1}{2}[\text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{0})) - \text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(\boldsymbol{\pi}, \boldsymbol{\pi}))], \quad (83)$$

685 which, by utilizing the fact that  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  and Zeeman field is added perturbatively so  
 686 that  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$  dominates at  $(\boldsymbol{\pi}, \boldsymbol{\pi})$ , we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} C_\chi &= \frac{1}{2}[\text{sgn}(I_S(\mathbf{0}) + \chi|I_A(\mathbf{0})|) - \chi] \\ &= -\chi \Theta(-|I_A(\mathbf{0})| - \chi I_S(\mathbf{0})). \end{aligned} \quad (84)$$

687 This formula works in the chosen parameter regime  $\mathbf{0} < \mathbf{m}_0 < 4t_\perp$  within weak Zeeman  
 688 treatment.

### 689 4.1.3 Strong Zeeman field

690 For a general strong Zeeman field whose strength is comparably large enough relative to  
 691 the system parameters (mainly bulk gap  $\mathbf{m}_0$ ) or even stronger, with arbitrary configuration  
 692 along  $\mathbf{z}$  direction, both the uniform and the weak criteria fail, and in this case, we usually  
 693 have to adopt the most general formula from Eq. (65), whose topological property is  
 694 revealed after a further diagonalization of mass terms given by Eq. (67), which turns the  
 695 total Hamiltonian again into a direct sum of a series of Dirac fermions shown in Eq. (68).  
 696 Then based on our discussion in 3, the Hall conductivity of each single Dirac fermion is  
 697 determined, from which we can analyze the topological property of the system.

## 698 4.2 Other fields

699 In the subsection, we present more examples of spin and orbital fields other than the  $\mathbf{z}$ -  
 700 Zeeman field discussed above, and the results are listed in Table 1. The signals appearing  
 701 here only apply in the subsection. The list of results reveals the power of our general  
 702 procedure, and is enlightening for discovering more topological phases driven by diverse  
 703 physical origins.

Table 1: Different fields and their forms under the transformation.

Name of field	Original field expression	Field after transformation	Kernel
Spin-orbital coupling	$\lambda_\parallel[\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x \tau_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y \tau_x]$	$\bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} \lambda_\parallel \tau_0(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y)$	$F_{S+}$
Zeeman field	$Z_z(l_z)\sigma_z \tau_0$	$(I_S^z(k)\tau_0 - I_A^z(k)\tau_y)\sigma_z$	$F_{S+}, F_{A+}$
	$Z_x(l_z)\sigma_x \tau_0$	$(I_S^x(k)\tau_x - I_A^x(k)\tau_z)\sigma_x$	$F_{S-}, F_{A-}$
	$Z_y(l_z)\sigma_y \tau_0$	$(I_S^y(k)\tau_x - I_A^y(k)\tau_z)\sigma_y$	$F_{S-}, F_{A-}$
Gate-voltage	$G(l_z)\sigma_0 \tau_0$	$(G_S(k)\tau_0 - G_A(k)\tau_y)\sigma_0$	$F_{S+}, F_{A+}$
Orbital field	$O_y(l_z)\sigma_0 \tau_y$	$(O_A^y(k)\tau_0 - O_S^y(k)\tau_y)\sigma_z$	$F_{S+}, F_{A+}$
	$O_x(l_z)\sigma_0 \tau_x$	$(O_A^x(k)\tau_z - O_S^x(k)\tau_x)\sigma_0$	$-F_{S-}, -F_{A-}$
	$O_z(l_z)\sigma_0 \tau_z$	$(O_A^z(k)\tau_x - O_S^z(k)\tau_z)\sigma_z$	$F_{S-}, -F_{A-}$

704 For a given field  $\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{k}, l_z)\boldsymbol{\sigma}_\mu \boldsymbol{\tau}_\nu$ , the transformation follows similarly by organizing the  
 705 projected elements  $\sum_{l_z} \mathbf{V}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) \langle \Phi_m^n(\mathbf{k}, l_z) | \boldsymbol{\sigma}_\mu \boldsymbol{\tau}_\nu | \Phi_{m'}^{n'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) \rangle$  ( $m, m' = 1, 2, 3, 4; n, n' = 1, \dots, L_z$ )  
 706 aligned with the sequence of the basis. The form of field after transformation will always  
 707 be two  $\mathbf{L}_z \times \mathbf{L}_z$  matrix fields differing by  $\mathbf{z}$ -parity symmetry labels, with  $\mathbf{S}$  counting for

708 symmetric distribution and  $\mathbf{A}$  for the opposite. Each matrix field will also be attached  
709 with a new  $4 \times 4$  Dirac matrix.

710 To express matrix quantities  $\mathbf{I}, \mathbf{G}, \mathbf{O}$  in Table 1, we introduce the momentum-dependent  
711 matrix-form acting functional  $\mathcal{F}_k$  over  $\mathbf{V}$  field that generates projected matrix component  
712 like

$$\mathcal{F}_k^{nn'}[\mathbf{V}] = \sum_{l_z} \mathbf{V}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) \mathbf{F}_V^{nn'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) = (\mathcal{F}_k^{n'n}[\mathbf{V}])^*, \quad (85)$$

713 where the summation kernel  $\mathbf{F}_V^{nn'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z)$  depends on different Dirac matrix the untrans-  
714 formed field carries. However, in practice, we find that the non-vanishing components in  
715 the transformed field matrix are only generated by four kinds of summation kernels,

$$\mathbf{F}_{S_+}^{nn'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) = |\mathbf{C}_n \mathbf{C}_{n'}| [\lambda_\perp^2 (f_+^n)^* f_+^{n'} + t_\perp^2 \eta^n \eta^{n'} (f_-^n)^* f_-^{n'}], \quad (86a)$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{A_+}^{nn'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) = |\mathbf{C}_n \mathbf{C}_{n'}| \lambda_\perp t_\perp [\eta^{n'} (f_+^n)^* f_-^{n'} + \eta^n (f_-^n)^* f_+^{n'}], \quad (86b)$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{S_-}^{nn'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) = |\mathbf{C}_n \mathbf{C}_{n'}| [-\lambda_\perp^2 (f_+^n)^* f_+^{n'} + t_\perp^2 \eta^n \eta^{n'} (f_-^n)^* f_-^{n'}], \quad (86c)$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{A_-}^{nn'}(\mathbf{k}, l_z) = |\mathbf{C}_n \mathbf{C}_{n'}| (-i) \lambda_\perp t_\perp [\eta^{n'} (f_+^n)^* f_-^{n'} - \eta^n (f_-^n)^* f_+^{n'}], \quad (86d)$$

716 different by symmetry requirement and an inner sign. In the table the symmetry labels  
717 between the transformed fields and the summation kernels are in one-to-one correspon-  
718 dence.

719 The table can be longer once one considers more kinds of Dirac matrices. This proce-  
720 dure above is general, powerful while easy to understand. Despite the easiness of the trans-  
721 formation, the non-trivial difficult part is to endow physical meaning to the attached fields,  
722 both before transformation and after. For instance, the spin-orbital coupling remains its  
723 meaning after the transformation, while being block-diagonal in the Dirac fermion rep-  
724 resentation; the  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field, as discussed above, is transformed into two matrix form  
725 Higgs fields, which stand as the effective mass generators.

Table 2: Duality of typical topological phases induced by spin order  $\sigma_z$  and orbital order  $\tau_y$ .  $\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{m}$  for top, bottom, middle and  $\mathbf{S}, \mathbf{A}$  for symmetric, antisymmetric distribution of fields, respectively.

Name of phase	$\sigma_z$ configuration	$\tau_y$ configuration
Chern insulator	$\mathbf{Z}_z^t = \mathbf{Z}_z^b \neq \mathbf{0}$	$\mathbf{O}_y^t = -\mathbf{O}_y^b \neq \mathbf{0}$
Axion insulator	$\mathbf{Z}_z^t = -\mathbf{Z}_z^b \neq \mathbf{0}$	$\mathbf{O}_y^t = \mathbf{O}_y^b \neq \mathbf{0}$
Half QAHE	$\mathbf{Z}_z^t \neq \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{Z}_z^b = \mathbf{0}$	$\mathbf{O}_y^t \neq \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{O}_y^b = \mathbf{0}$
Metallic QAHE	$\mathbf{Z}_{z,S}^m$ strong	$\mathbf{O}_{y,A}^m$ strong

726 **Spin-orbital duality** Interestingly, we see that the  $\mathbf{y}$ -orbital order is transformed to  
727 attach the same Dirac matrices as the transformed  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field, but with symmetry  
728 indices of matrix quantities exchanged. This relation tells that, as long as some topo-  
729 logical phase is discovered with  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field  $\mathbf{Z}_z = \mathbf{Z}_{z,S} + \mathbf{Z}_{z,A}$ , another phase with the  
730 same topological index can immediately be identified with  $\mathbf{y}$ -orbital order satisfying that  
731  $\mathbf{O}_{y,A} = \mathbf{Z}_{z,S}, \mathbf{O}_{y,S} = \mathbf{Z}_{z,A}$ . For instance, we show the dual phases formed by  $\sigma_z$  and  $\tau_y$  orders  
732 in Table 2, the Chern insulator, aka quantum anomalous Hall effect (QAHE), the axion  
733 insulator, the half QAHE and the metallic QAHE as several typical phases in magnetic  
734 topological insulators as we will discuss below. Here one has to notice that for the metallic

735 QAHE [32], which requires a relatively strong magnetism in the middle of a topological in-  
 736 sulator film, the corresponding  $\tau_y$  orbital order induced metallic QAHE requires a higher  
 737 threshold for the antisymmetric field strength  $\mathbf{O}_{y,A}^m$ , due to the odd function nature which  
 738 forces  $\mathbf{O}_{y,A}^m(L_z/2) = \mathbf{0}$ .

739 Following the effective mass treatment above, we can furthermore construct quantita-  
 740 tive model unifying the two orders. There are now totally five mass terms that read

$$\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{k}) = \left[ \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} m_n \tau_z + (I_S^z + O_A^y) \tau_0 - (I_A^z + O_S^y) \tau_y \right] (\mathbf{k}), \quad (87)$$

741 and a similar diagonalization leads to the effective masses

$$\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{k}) \xrightarrow{\text{diagonalization}} \bigoplus_{n=1}^{2L_z} \tilde{m}_n(\mathbf{k}), \quad (88)$$

742 without affecting the spin-orbital coupling field (the linear winding part). On the other  
 743 hand, in the context of weak field, we only preserve  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}' = \mathbf{1}$  components and write  
 744 down mass terms for  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  block as

$$[m \tau_z + (I_S^z + O_A^y) \tau_0 - (I_A^z + O_S^y) \tau_y] (\mathbf{k}), \quad (89)$$

745 with  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  label ignored. Here merely a substitution  $I_S \rightarrow I_S^z + O_A^y$ ,  $I_A \rightarrow I_A^z + O_S^y$  happened  
 746 compare with Eq. (76), and a similar diagonalization leads to two effective masses for the  
 747 surface Dirac bands as

$$\tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{k}) = (I_S^z + O_A^y)(\mathbf{k}) + \chi \sqrt{m^2(\mathbf{k}) + (I_A^z + O_S^y)^2(\mathbf{k})}, \quad (90)$$

748 from which the synergistic and competing relations between  $\sigma_z$  and  $\tau_y$  orders are shown  
 749 more explicitly.

## 750 5 Topological phases with weak field

751 Counting on the mean strength of the magnetic exchange interaction, our exploration  
 752 can be further divided into two main branches as weak and strong Zeeman fields. The  
 753 division follows simply from the criterion whether the phase can be described within the  
 754  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  frame, or equivalently, whether Eq. (76) from weak Zeeman field approximation is  
 755 applicable. If it is the case, we identify the phase to lie inside the weak field regime, as we  
 756 shall discuss here. ~~From here on, all references to topological insulator mean a strong TI~~  
 757 ~~with single Dirac point at  $\Gamma$ .~~

### 758 5.1 Half quantum mirror Hall effect: a non-magnetic film with mirror symmetry

759 The topological insulator film itself without adding any external ingredients or interac-  
 760 tions, ~~but with an intrinsic mirror symmetry, possibly like rhombohedral 3D TI  $\text{Bi}_2(\text{Se},$~~   
 761  ~~$\text{Te})_3$  along the [100] direction or with a mirror twin-boundary along [001] direction,~~  
 762 is already interesting enough and exhibits a novel topological phase [33], namely, the  
 763 half quantum mirror Hall effect shown in Fig. 10, which ~~is deeply related to the mirror~~  
 764 ~~symmetry of the system and~~ reveals measurable parity anomaly physics. A general film  
 765 Hamiltonian reads  $\mathcal{H} = \sum_{l_z, l'_z, k} \Psi_{l_z, k}^\dagger H(l_z, l'_z, k) \Psi_{l'_z, k}$  with  $\mathbf{k} = (k_x, k_y)$ , and the out of film  
 766 plane mirror symmetry  $\mathcal{M}_z$  emerges as a combination of inversion and  $\mathbf{C}_{2z}$  rotation that

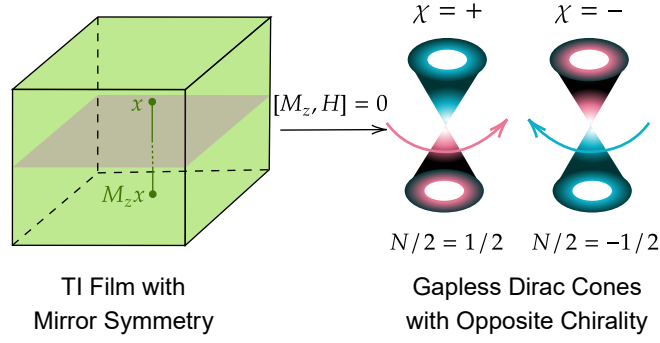


Figure 10: Schematic diagram of the half quantum mirror Hall effect. The lowest four bands of a topological insulator film with mirror symmetry (left) are classified into two gapless Dirac cones with opposite chiralities labelled by the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{z}$ -mirror operator.

767 reads  $\mathcal{M}_z \Psi_{l_z, k} \mathcal{M}_z^{-1} = \mathbf{U}_z \Psi_{-l_z, k}$ , where  $\mathbf{U}_z$  is a unitary matrix. Requiring such a symmetry  
 768 over the system Hamiltonian leads to the condition  $\mathbf{U}_z^\dagger \mathbf{H}(l_z, l'_z, \mathbf{k}) \mathbf{U}_z = \mathbf{H}(-l_z, -l'_z, \mathbf{k})$ .  
 769 It is then possible to write down the mirror operator under  $\{\Psi_{k, l_z}\}$  as  $\mathbf{M}_z = \mathbf{C}_{2z} \mathbf{P}$ , with  
 770  $\mathbf{U}_z$  as its [anti-diagonal/off-diagonal](#) elements, and the Hamiltonian can be projected into  
 771 decoupled mirror-labelled parts as

$$\mathbf{H}_\chi = \mathbf{P}_\chi^{M_z} \mathbf{H}, \quad \mathbf{P}_\chi^{M_z} = \frac{\mathbf{1} + i\chi \mathbf{M}_z}{2}, \quad (91)$$

772 with  $\chi$  labelling the eigenvalue of the mirror operator. Each  $\mathbf{H}_\chi$  is yet again a complete  
 773 system whose non-trivial property is revealed by the (zero-temperature, ignored below)  
 774 mirror Hall conductivity

$$\sigma_H^\chi = \frac{e^2}{h} \frac{\text{Im}}{\pi} \left[ \sum_{E_n^\chi < \mu < E_m^\chi} \int d^2 k \frac{\bar{v}_x^{mn, \chi} \bar{v}_y^{nm, \chi}}{(E_n^\chi - E_m^\chi)^2} \right], \quad (92)$$

775 where  $\bar{v}_i^{mn, \chi} = \langle n^\chi | \partial_{k_i} \mathbf{H}^\chi | m^\chi \rangle$  is the expectation value of the mirror velocity operator  
 776 evaluated over eigenstates of the mirror-projected Hamiltonian. Clearly, this is just the  
 777 usual Kubo formula [65] evaluated over the projected Hamiltonian  $\mathbf{H}_\chi$ , and thanks to the  
 778 imposed mirror symmetry, two parts with mirror label  $\chi = \pm$  do not communicate with  
 779 each other and are totally decoupled.

780 The gapless pair of Dirac fermions in a topological insulator film causes the half quan-  
 781 tum mirror Hall effect. Here in the concrete model the [anti-diagonal/off-diagonal](#) ele-  
 782 ments of mirror operator read  $\mathbf{U}_z = -i\sigma_z \tau_z$ , which is projected into  $\tau_z$  under multi-Dirac  
 783 fermions representation (see Appendix B.), indicated by  $\chi = \pm$  as its eigenvalue in the  
 784 effective Hamiltonian. The gapless  $n = 1$  Dirac fermions in the TI film read

$$\mathbf{H}_{n=1} = \mathbf{H}_{\text{surf},+} \oplus \mathbf{H}_{\text{surf},-}, \quad (93)$$

785 where each block with mirror label reads

$$\mathbf{H}_{\text{surf}, \chi} = \lambda_{||} (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y a) \sigma_y) + \chi m(k) \sigma_z, \quad (94)$$

786 with  $m(k) = \Theta(-m_0(k)) m_0(k)$  identified. To show the nature of the half quantum mirror  
 787 Hall effect, we calculate the Hall conductivity of  $\mathbf{H}_\chi$  obtained from the mirror-projected  
 788 TI film Hamiltonian, and of the split Dirac fermion  $\mathbf{H}_{\text{surf}, \chi}$ . The results are shown in

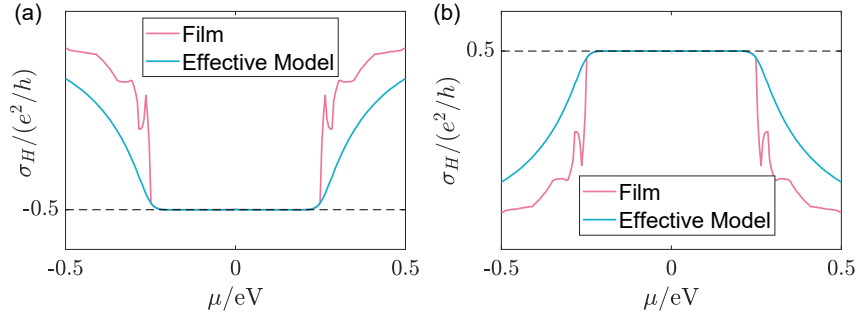


Figure 11: Half-quantized mirror Hall metal: total layer number  $L_z = 19$ . Results are presented for (a)  $\chi = +$ , and (b)  $\chi = -$ . Both results from direct calculation with TI film model and effective model with  $h_{n=1,\chi}$  sub-blocks are shown.

789 Fig. 11, where the half-quantized transverse conductivity nature is shown for each  $\chi$   
 790 part with inverse signs, indicating quantum spin Hall like physics [12, 43–45, 85–89], while  
 791 the topological origin of the half-quantized mirror Hall conductivity is bound with the  
 792 metallic gapless Dirac fermions [33]. Their massless low-energy parts distribute mirror-  
 793 (anti-)symmetrically at both top and bottom surfaces of the TI film as a result from the  
 794 bulk-boundary correspondence of 3D strong topological insulator [17], corresponding to  
 795 states with mass  $\pm\Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k}))m_0(\mathbf{k})$  term at  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) > 0$ . Here, the symmetry statement is  
 796 traced back to our basis, which is chosen to distribute along  $\mathbf{z}$  either mirror symmetrically  
 797 or anti-symmetrically (see Appendix B). As a complete band, the surface Dirac cone does  
 798 not end at a finite wavevector, but gradually emerges into the bulk with a regulated non-  
 799 zero mass term represented by  $\Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k}))m_0(\mathbf{k})$  at  $m_0(\mathbf{k}) < 0$ , and it is this non-vanishing  
 800 high-energy part that ultimately gives rise to the half-quantized Hall conductivity, as  
 801 discussed in Section 3, which finally reads by Eq. (40) as  $\sigma_H^\chi = -\chi e^2/2h$ , when the Fermi  
 802 surface satisfies that  $m_0(\mathbf{k}_F) > 0$ .

803 The physically observable effect generated by the phase is embedded in the mirror Hall  
 804 conductivity [33], which is defined as

$$\sigma_H^{\text{Mirror}} = \sum_{\chi} \chi \sigma_H^\chi, \quad (95)$$

805 and equals to quantum unit  $-e^2/h$  in the case. The quantity reveals that, though, by  
 806 opposite Hall conductivity, the charge current by a transverse electrical field vanishes  
 807 as  $\sigma_H = \sum_{\chi} \chi \sigma_H^\chi = 0$ , the ‘mirror’ current does not, similar to that in quantum spin  
 808 Hall effect. Nevertheless, a better way of looking at the half quantum mirror Hall effect  
 809 may start from treating it as an intrinsic ‘spin’ Hall effect in metal, while the effect  
 810 shows quantization with its transverse ‘spin’ Hall conductivity that shares a topological  
 811 origin deeply related to the parity anomaly, and replacing ‘spin’ with ‘mirror’ leads to  
 812 the observation that in different mirror sectors, the mirror current and the charge current  
 813 will be either parallel or anti-parallel with the same quantized magnitude. Such a way of  
 814 narration also lies in the lineage of induced dissipationless mirror current and dissipative  
 815 longitudinal current, as they are both generated by metallic gapless Dirac fermions. To  
 816 detect the mirror current, non-local electrical transport signals [90–92] are needed, while  
 817 to reveal the quantized nature, one needs to perform a series of measurements to fully  
 818 separate the dissipationless and dissipative currents [33], by changing the sample width  
 819 and noticing the scale invariance of the Hall conductance.

## 820 5.2 Quantum anomalous Hall effect: Chern Insulators

821 The Chern insulator is identified as an insulating phase which hosts the quantum Hall  
 822 effect [93] with quantized Hall conductance, while without the need of applying an external  
 823 magnetic field to form Landau levels [94]. The key ingredient lies in the breaking of time-  
 824 reversal symmetry, which makes the non-vanishing Hall conductivity possible, as studied  
 825 extensively in the anomalous Hall effect [95]. The quantization nature, on the other  
 826 hand, is determined by the Berry phase flux integral over the Brillouin zone, which is  
 827 an integer known as the first Chern number [10, 47, 72, 96–98]. An insulator with a non-  
 828 zero Chern number is known to host gapless chiral edge modes [24] that circulate around  
 829 the system dissipationlessly without backscattering [99]. Essentially, the number of these  
 830 modes is equal to the Chern invariant, as a physical realization of the index theorem  
 831 by bulk-boundary correspondence [13, 25, 26, 100]. It is usually argued that to realize a  
 832 Chern insulator in a realistic material, relatively strong spin-orbital coupling together with  
 833 internal magnetism are needed [101].

834 With confined geometry, the topological insulator film is predicted [48, 50, 102] to host  
 835 the quantum anomalous Hall effect (QAHE) with proper magnetism, either by magnetic  
 836 doping approach [49, 103–107] like Cr and V doped  $(\text{Bi,Sb})_2\text{Te}_3$ , magnetic proximity ef-  
 837 fect [108] in the sandwich heterostructures of  $(\text{Zn, Cr})\text{Te}/(\text{Bi, Sb})_2\text{Te}_3/(\text{Zn, Cr})\text{Te}$  or  
 838 establishing intrinsic magnetic order [109–111] in materials like  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  with an odd  
 839 layer number. In this sense three typical cases realizing the Chern insulating phase are  
 840 presented in Fig. 12, with uniform Zeeman field (to make consistency with discussion here,  
 841 the Zeeman strength here is still chosen to be weak, while the uniformly strong strength  
 842 case is left to be discussed in the higher Chern number case later on), symmetric top and  
 843 bottom surface Zeeman fields configuration and an asymmetric configuration which does  
 844 not break the holistic polarization, by which we mean that the symmetric ingredient in  
 845 the configuration overwhelms the asymmetric one. The common feature these realizations  
 846 share is the parallel polarization of the top and bottom surface-magnetism vertical to the  
 847 TI film plane, effectively as the Zeeman field directions that point to both up or down.

848 The verification of the three cases is brought out by numerical calculations with both  
 849 TI film and weak Zeeman effective four-band models, as revealed in Fig. 13, Fig. 14 and  
 850 Fig. 15, respectively. Besides the bands in (a) that all show Zeeman-gapped feature with  
 851 perfect correspondence between two methods, the Hall conductivity in (c) pictures captures  
 852 the essence of a Chern insulator with an integer Chern number quantifying the quantized  
 853 Hall plateau magnitude. What is more, the calculated  $I_{S/A}$  in (b) and Hall conductivity  
 854 in (d) for  $\tilde{H}_\chi$  reveal more about physics behind the phenomenon. Below, based on the  
 855 symmetric or asymmetric Zeeman configurations, we further divide the discussion into two  
 856 classes.

### 857 5.2.1 Symmetric magnetic structure

858 In this class,

$$\begin{cases} I_S \neq 0 \\ I_A = 0 \end{cases}, \quad (96)$$

859 and the given first two cases satisfy the condition. In case I and II, the symmetric Zeeman  
 860 distribution leads to a vanishing  $I_A$ , and the effective mass, according to Eq. (81), is written  
 861 as

$$\tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{k}) = I_S(\mathbf{k}) + \chi|m(\mathbf{k})|, \quad I_S > 0, \quad (97)$$

862 it is thus clear that under the circumstance,  $\chi = -$  branch will contain a mass sign change  
 863 from Dirac point  $\Gamma = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$  to high-energy point  $\mathbf{M} = (\pi, \pi)$ , and is topologically non-



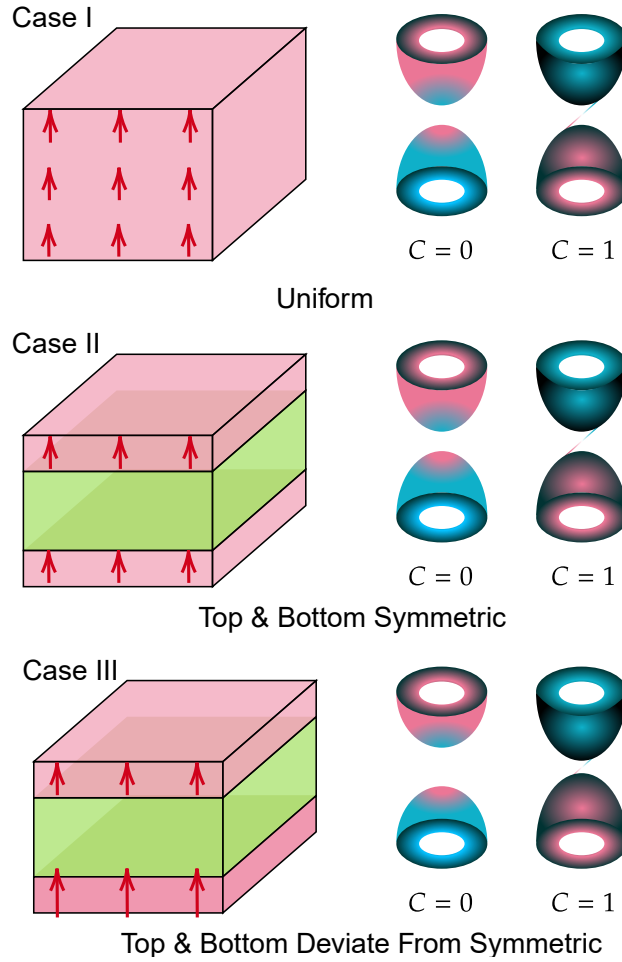


Figure 12: Schematic diagram of three typical Chern insulator cases with pairing gapped lowest Dirac cones responsible for the phase. From top to bottom: Case I: Chern insulator with uniform magnetism whose polarization contains a non-vanishing component vertical to the TI film; Case II: Chern insulator with symmetric top and bottom magnetism; Case III: Chern insulator with top and bottom magnetism that deviates from symmetric distribution, but the polarization direction remains the same. In all three cases, two gapped Dirac cones, where the gap comes from the gapped surface states, are present with one trivial cone and one cone with a unit Chern number. In the third case we deliberately tune the gap in the diagram to emphasize that it is the cone with a smaller gap that is non-trivial.

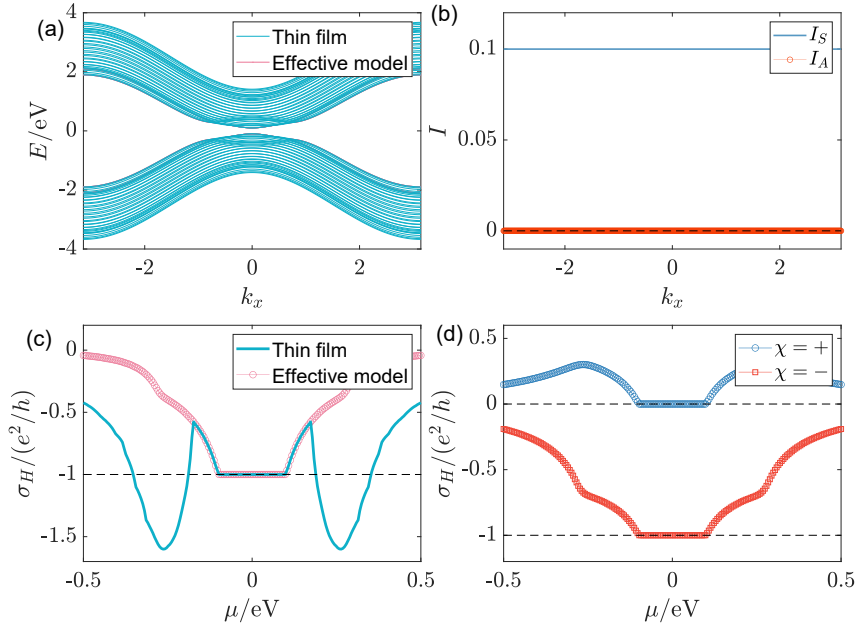


Figure 13: Chern insulator case I: total layer number  $L_z = 19$  with uniform Zeeman field  $V_z \equiv 0.1$  eV. (a) Comparison of band structure from TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (b) Calculated  $I_S(\mathbf{k})$  and  $I_A(\mathbf{k})$ . (c) Calculated Hall conductivity from TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (d) Hall conductivity for  $\chi = \pm$ .

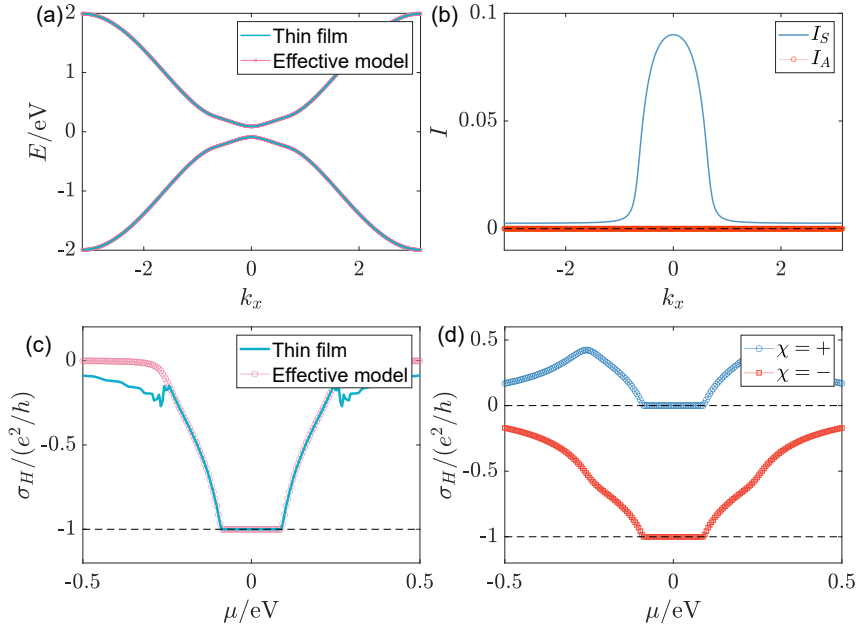


Figure 14: Chern insulator case II: total layer number  $L_z = 19$  with symmetric Zeeman field  $V_z(l_z) = 0.1$  eV at top and bottom 2 layerstop-2-layer Zeeman field  $V_z^t = 0.1$  eV and bottom-2-layer field  $V_z^b = 0.2$  eV. (a) Comparison of band structure from the lowest four bands of TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (b) Calculated  $I_S(\mathbf{k})$  and  $I_A(\mathbf{k})$ . (c) Calculated Hall conductivity from TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (d) Hall conductivity for  $\chi = \pm$ .

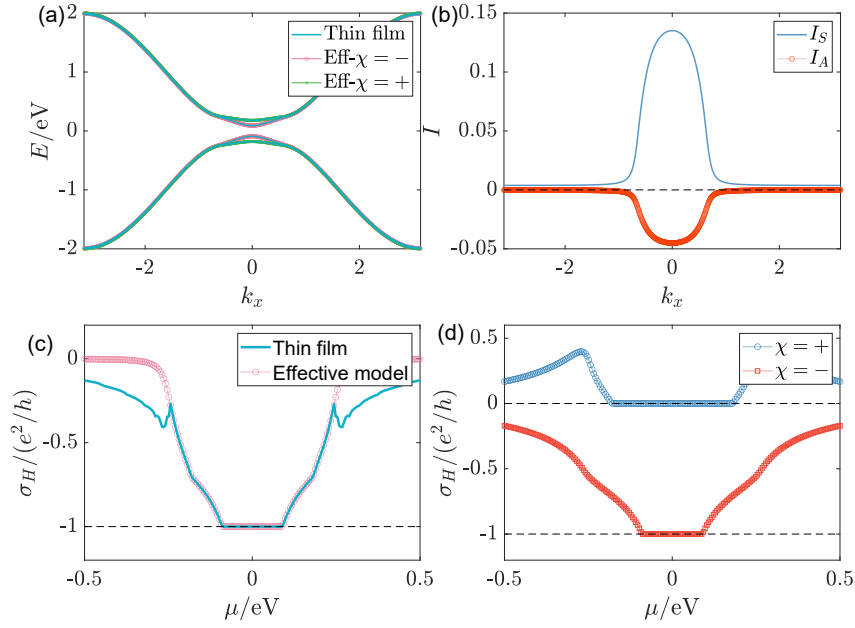


Figure 15: Chern insulator case III: total layer number  $L_z = 19$  with top-2-layer Zeeman field  $V_z^t = 0.1$  eV and bottom-2-layer field  $V_z^b = 0.2$  eV symmetric Zeeman field  $V_z(L_z) = 0.1$  eV at top and bottom 2 layers. (a) Comparison of band structure from the lowest four bands of TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (b) Calculated  $I_S(\mathbf{k})$  and  $I_A(\mathbf{k})$ . (c) Calculated Hall conductivity from TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (d) Hall conductivity for  $\chi = \pm$ .

864 trivial with unit Chern number given by Eq. (83), while  $\chi = +$  mass remains positive and  
 865 leads to a trivially gapped surface band. And this composes of the explanation of the  
 866  $\chi$ -dependent Hall conductivity for the first two cases.

### 867 5.2.2 Asymmetric magnetic structure

868 In this case,

$$\begin{cases} I_S \neq 0 \\ I_A \neq 0 \\ |I_S| > |I_A| \end{cases}, \quad (98)$$

869 i.e., an imbalance between top and bottom Zeeman strength appears, while their directions  
 870 remain parallel so that the symmetric component overwhelms, as reflected by the case III.  
 871 Now we observe that in Fig. 15 (d) the  $\chi = -$  branch is non-trivial with unit quantized  
 872 Hall plateau, and  $\chi = +$  branch is trivial with a broader zero-Hall plateau, this means that  
 873 the non-trivial  $\chi = -$  band has a smaller gap than the  $\chi = +$  band, as revealed in Fig. 15  
 874 (a). Lifting this to some principle, we claim that *the surface band with a smaller magnetic*  
 875 *gap is non-trivial for a Chern insulator film.* To gain insight from the phenomenon, notice  
 876 that in this case, both  $I_S$  and  $I_A$  are non-vanishing, but generally  $I_S > |I_A| > 0$  since the  
 877 Zeeman configuration is closer to the symmetric case, i.e.  $V_S > |V_A| > 0$  near two surfaces  
 878 in this case. The above observation leads to

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{m}_\chi(0) = I_S(0) + \chi |I_A(0)| > 0 \\ \tilde{m}_\chi(M) = I_S(M) + \chi \sqrt{m^2(M) + I_A^2(M)} \sim \chi |m(M)| \end{cases}, \quad (99)$$

879 and since non-trivial topology requires mass inversion, we conclude that  $\tilde{m}_-$  is non-trivial  
 880 with unit Chern number while  $\chi = +$  is trivial, and clearly the gap  $\Delta = 2|\tilde{m}(\mathbf{0})|$  tells that  
 881  $\Delta_- < \Delta_+$ .

882 Pictures and discussions above complete the case study for the Chern insulator phase  
 883 here. Notice that in the typical cases given above, [the Zeeman field directs along  \$\mathbf{z}\$ -positive](#)  
 884 [axis, and](#) it is always [that](#)  $\chi = -$  band that has  $-e^2/h$  Hall conductivity while the  $\chi = +$   
 885 band is trivial with zero Hall contribution, i.e., it is a  $\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{0}$  combination with the sign  
 886 of Hall conductivity determined by the polarization direction of the Zeeman field, as we  
 887 shall illustrate further below.

888 Generalization of the picture above about the Chern insulator phase in TI film to  
 889 arbitrary weak Zeeman configuration that varies layer by layer is presented here. According  
 890 to Eq. (84), the non-trivial condition is satisfied whenever  $|I_S| > |I_A|$ , i.e., symmetric  
 891 Zeeman distribution overwhelms asymmetric configuration, and especially there exists a  
 892  $\chi$  for which it holds that

$$-\chi I_S(\mathbf{0}) > |I_A(\mathbf{0})|, \quad (100)$$

893 and correspondingly we have

$$C_\chi = -\chi, \quad C_{\bar{\chi}} = \mathbf{0}, \quad (101)$$

894 with  $\bar{\chi} = -\chi$  identified. This tells us that while one of the two gapped surface Dirac  
 895 fermions becomes topologically non-trivial, carrying non-vanishing Chern index of unit,  
 896 the other gapped cone is driven into a topologically trivial band. Then totally the system  
 897 owns unit Chern number and quantized Hall conductivity. Meanwhile, by definition of  $I_S$   
 898 in Eq. (73a), one deduces that when  $I_S(\mathbf{0}) > \mathbf{0}$  which corresponds to a general  $\mathbf{z}$ -up  $\mathbf{V}_S$   
 899 configuration, it is  $\chi = -$  that satisfies the condition, vice versa, which allows us to write

$$\begin{cases} C_- = \mathbf{1}, \quad C_+ = \mathbf{0}, & \text{for } I_S(\mathbf{0}) > \mathbf{0} \\ C_+ = -\mathbf{1}, \quad C_- = \mathbf{0}, & \text{for } I_S(\mathbf{0}) < \mathbf{0} \end{cases} \quad (102)$$

900 with  $I_S(\mathbf{0})$  contributed mainly from surfaces. There is indeed no threshold for the Zeeman  
 901 strength to realize Chern insulator counting the gapless feature of surface states as long  
 902 as Eq. (100) is satisfied.

903 We have seen that for the topological insulator based Chern insulator, there are always  
 904 one trivially gapped Dirac cone and one with unit Chern number, and a natural question  
 905 emerges as which cone is non-trivial? In the symmetric case, gaps of two Dirac fermions are  
 906 the same, and we have to rely on  $\chi$  labelled mirror symmetry together with magnetization  
 907 direction to decide which cone is non-trivial. However, for the slightly asymmetric case,  
 908 a quick answer to the question can be made: the one with smaller gap is. To see why, we  
 909 can consider the gap equation Eq. (82) which can be rewritten as

$$\Delta_\chi = 2|(-\chi I_S(\mathbf{0})) - |I_A(\mathbf{0})||, \quad (103)$$

910 we find that for the asymmetric Chern insulator case  $-\chi I_S(\mathbf{0}) > |I_A(\mathbf{0})| \geq \mathbf{0}$ , and it always  
 911 holds that

$$\Delta_\chi < \Delta_{\bar{\chi}}, \quad (104)$$

912 then combined with Eq. (101), we arrive at the conclusion that it is always the cone with  
 913 smaller gap which becomes topologically non-trivial carrying unit Chern number, while  
 914 the cone with a larger Zeeman gap becomes just trivial.

### 915 5.2.3 Mirror layer Chern number

916 Notice that there exists a fully [mirror](#) symmetric case where  $\mathbf{V}_A = \mathbf{0}$ , and in this special  
 917 case, a quantity proposed as *mirror layer Chern number* can be defined. Again, the

918 mirror-symmetric Hamiltonian including the Zeeman term can be projected into decoupled  
919 mirror-labelled parts as

$$H_\chi = P_\chi^{M_z} H, P_\chi^{M_z} = \frac{1 + i\chi M_z}{2}, \quad (91)$$

920 with  $M_z$  the represented mirror operator, and its [anti-diagonal/off-diagonal](#) elements are  
921 recognized to be  $U_z$ , which relates quantity at  $\pm l_z$  (see [section 5.1](#) for more about [mirror](#)  
922 [symmetry](#)).

923 Due to the film geometry, it is natural to introduce the so-called layer Hall conductivity  
924 [112–116] by considering layer-dependent eigenstates

$$\sigma_H(l) = \frac{e^2}{h} \frac{\text{Im}}{\pi} \sum_{E_n < \mu < E_m} \sum_{l'} \int d^2k \frac{\bar{v}_x^{nm}(l) \bar{v}_y^{mn}(l')}{(E_n - E_m)^2}, \quad (105)$$

925 where in the usual case, the expectation value of velocity operator is  $\bar{v}_i^{mn}(l) = \langle m(l) | \partial_{k_i} H | n(l) \rangle$   
926 with only diagonal elements, which, however, fails for the mirror projected Hamiltonian.  
927 The key observation lies in the fact that by projection  $\partial_{k_i} H_\chi$  contains not only diagonal  
928 elements but off-diagonal part, which induces additional non-local transition contribution  
929 from exactly mirror symmetrized layers. Work the effect out and one obtains the mirror  
930 layer Hall conductivity

$$\sigma_H^\chi(l) = \frac{e^2}{h} \frac{\text{Im}}{\pi} \left[ \sum_{E_n^\chi < \mu < E_m^\chi} \sum_{l'} \int d^2k \frac{\bar{v}_{\chi, k_x}^{nm}(l) \bar{v}_{\chi, k_y}^{mn}(l')}{(E_n^\chi - E_m^\chi)^2} \right], \quad (106)$$

931 with

$$\bar{v}_{\chi, k_i}^{nm}(l) = \frac{1}{2} \langle n^\chi(l) | (v_{k_i}(l) | m^\chi(l) \rangle + U_z v_{k_i}(-l) | m^\chi(-l) \rangle), \quad (107)$$

932 where the appeared velocity operator is defined through the original Hamiltonian and is  
933 assumed to contain only diagonal element  $v_{k_i}(l) = (\partial_{k_i} H)(l)$ .

934 Now we turn to our special case. As stated in half quantum mirror Hall effect,  
935 the bare Hamiltonian without external field contains mirror symmetry, while the same  
936 symmetry constraint imposed on the Zeeman field distribution leads to the restriction  
937 that  $V_z(l_z) = V_z(-l_z)$ , which is equivalent to the requirement that  $V_A(l_z) = \mathbf{0}$ . Thus,  
938 Chern insulator generated by TI film with symmetric Zeeman field owns mirror symme-  
939 try, and the corresponding  $\sigma_H^\chi(l_z)$  could be carried out, so does its layer-cumulated version  
940  $\sigma_{H,c}^\chi(l_z) = \sum_{l=-l_z}^{l_z} \sigma_H^\chi(l)$ , as presented in Fig. 16. The [anti-diagonal/off-diagonal](#) ele-  
941 ments of mirror operator read  $U_z = -i\sigma_z \tau_z$  for the TI film.

942 The layer dependent Hall conductivity serves us a new insight to understand the phe-  
943 nomenon. Treating the system as a whole, its layer-resolved Hall conductivity, as pre-  
944 sented in Fig. 16(c), becomes non-zero mainly near the top and bottom surfaces where  
945 time-reversal symmetry is broken explicitly under the Zeeman field. And the cumulated  
946 Hall conductivity gains approximately half quantum Hall conductivity near two surfaces.  
947 On the other hand, as shown in Fig. 16(a), (b), when we split the system by mirror symme-  
948 try, the layer-resolved mirror Hall conductivity shows similar top and bottom distribution  
949 as the whole system, but with only half the amplitude by mirror splitting, while the Hall  
950 conductivity distribution around mirror plane shows opposite-sign peaks inherited from  
951 the time-reversal unbroken bulk property like that in the half quantum mirror Hall effect.  
952 Once the Hall conductivity contribution is added layer by layer, we immediately see the  
953 tri-section configuration: for the non-trivial  $C_- = \mathbf{1}$  part, there exist two Hall-plateaus  
954 separating the surface and bulk, then following the top-middle-bottom section cut, we  
955 see a contribution rather close to  $(-1/4) - (-1/2) - (-1/4)$  from each section; and for the

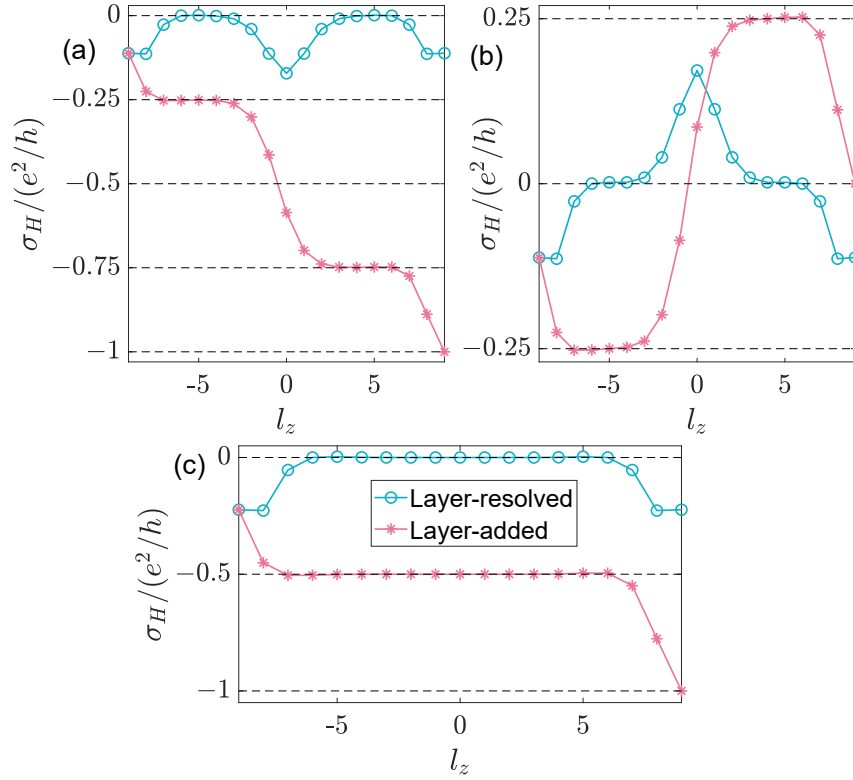


Figure 16: Mirror layer Hall conductivity for topological insulator film with symmetric  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field immersed at top **2** and bottom **2** layers upon total **19** layers with strength  $V_z = 0.1\text{eV}$ , and chemical potential is chosen to be  $\mu = 2.5\text{meV}$ , where (a) for  $\chi = -$ , (b) for  $\chi = +$  and (c) for the total result by adding two mirror parts together, respectively. Both layer-resolved and layer-added Hall conductivity are presented. To respect the mirror symmetry we put the TI film at origin and the layer index becomes  $l_z = -\frac{L_z-1}{2}, -\frac{L_z-3}{2}, \dots, \frac{L_z-1}{2}$  with total layer number  $L_z = 19$ .

956 trivial  $C_+ = 0$  part, the section separation is not that apparent, and we only roughly write  
 957  $(-c/4)-(c/2)-(-c/4)$  with  $c$  approximately one to represent the observed distribution.

### 958 5.3 Axion insulator: an antisymmetric magnetic structure

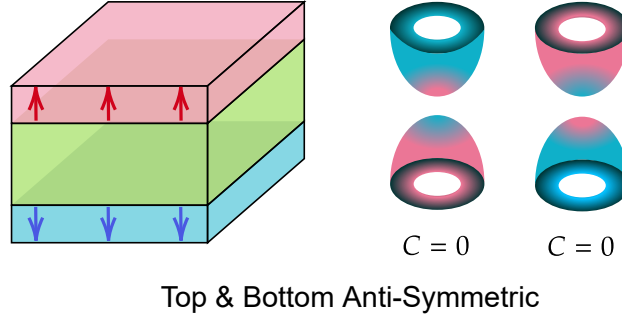


Figure 17: Schematic diagram of the axion insulator. On the left, the magnetic heterostructure of the TI film is presented, with top and bottom surface magnetism containing opposite polarization components vertical to the film. On the right, a pair of trivially gapped Dirac cones is presented, both with zero Chern number. The gap comes from the gapped surface states.

959 Along with the special  $(\mathbf{3} + \mathbf{1})$ -D space-time dimension, the Maxwell electrodynamics  
 960 is allowed to be decorated with an extra  $\theta$  term, which generates the axion electrodynam-  
 961 ics [117, 118] to the space-time dependent  $\theta$  axion field that couples with the ordinary elec-  
 962 tromagnetic field. On a practical level, based on the picture of surface Hall effect [64, 119]  
 963 and analogical mathematical structure between Hall current and magnetization current,  
 964 people generalize and propose the topological field theory [50], where a  $\theta$  term is intro-  
 965 duced to describe the magnetoelectric effect [112–114, 120–125] in a topological insulator  
 966 medium, where the axion field is forced to gain a magnitude of  $\pi$  [126] by symmetry and  
 967 topological requirement.

968 Realistically, an anti-ferromagnetic TI represents an example of the axion insulator  
 969 [112]. The axion field, proportional to the space-time volume integral field product  $\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B}$   
 970 or equivalently the Chern-Simons form [50], is odd under time reversal/inversion. In a  
 971 system with such symmetry, the  $\theta$  field matters only for its absolute value and is defined  
 972 only modulo  $2\pi$ , which is essential for its  $\pi$  magnitude [84]. The anti-ferromagnetic TI  
 973 certainly breaks these two symmetries, however, as a 3D system, its  $\theta$  quantization is  
 974 protected by an effective time-reversal symmetry as a combination of time reversal and  
 975 translation [127].

976 The magnetic configuration in TI film closest to the proposed axion insulator is the one  
 977 in Fig. 17, which shows a zero-Hall plateau and accompanied non-vanishing longitudinal  
 978 conductance as an experimental signature [51, 110, 128], also in Cr, V doped  $(\text{Bi}, \text{Sb})_2\text{Te}_3$   
 979 and  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  systems with an even layer number. Here then, based on the effective mass  
 980 picture, we show that the two Dirac cones with gapped surface states are both trivial,  
 981 once high-energy parts are involved. Now the fully antisymmetric magnetic configuration  
 982 leads to  $\mathbf{I}_S = \mathbf{0}$  for all  $\mathbf{k}$ , and the only left Zeeman quantity is  $\mathbf{I}_A$ , as shown in Fig. 18(b).  
 983 Then upon weak Zeeman approximation, the two effective masses become, according to  
 984 Eq. (81),

$$\tilde{m}_\chi(\mathbf{k}) = \chi \sqrt{m^2(\mathbf{k}) + I_A^2(\mathbf{k})}, \quad (108)$$

985 which do not show sign reversal in whole Brillouin zone for both  $\chi$  and are thus trivial.  
 986 Numerical results for the Hall conductivities related to two masses are shown in Fig. 18

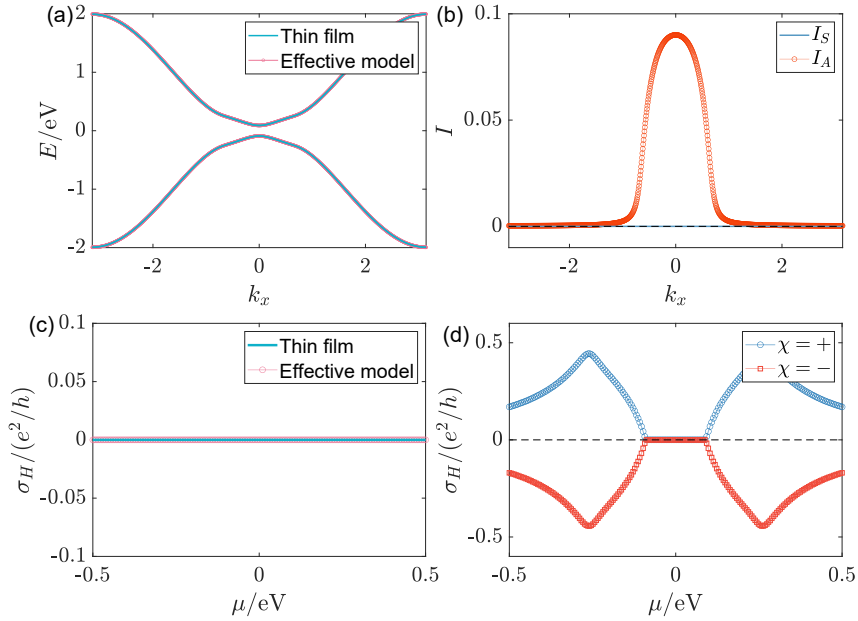


Figure 18: Axion insulator: total layer number  $L_z = 19$  with top-2-layer Zeeman field  $\mathbf{V}_z^t = \mathbf{0.1}$  eV and bottom-2-layer field  $\mathbf{V}_z^b = -\mathbf{0.1}$  eV. (a) Comparison of band structure from the lowest four bands of TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (b) Calculated  $I_S(\mathbf{k})$  and  $I_A(\mathbf{k})$ . (c) Calculated Hall conductivity from TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (d) Hall conductivity for  $\chi = \pm$ .

987 (d), where they cancel each other exactly at any chemical potential. Especially the zero-  
 988 plateaus for both  $\chi$  bands, which correspond to the situation with the chemical potential  
 989 lying inside the Zeeman gap, reveal that both bands are trivial with zero Chern number.

990 We can also generalize this case. Generally for the axion insulator we need  $|I_S(\mathbf{0})| < |I_A(\mathbf{0})|$ ,  
 991 i.e., asymmetric Zeeman distribution overwhelms symmetric configuration at surfaces,  
 992 then from Eq. (84) we have

$$C_+ = C_- = 0, \quad (109)$$

993 which in fact leads to a trivially insulating phase viewed from the effective 2D model. The  
 994 phase is termed as the axion insulator (AI) phase, since the totally asymmetric magnetic  
 995 polarization leads to, if one switches a surface-state representation, a sign difference of  
 996 low-energy mass of top and bottom surface states, which gives rise to non-vanishing Berry  
 997 curvature at low-energy thus surface Hall contribution, with opposite sign for two surfaces.  
 998 However, the Chern number as we have shown for each complete surface band is zero, which  
 999 reveals an overall cancellation of transverse transport signals to the linear order, and the  
 1000 Hall conductivity contributed from the gapped surface states is not protected to be half-  
 1001 quantized. Furthermore, counting on the zero Chern number nature for each individual  
 1002 band, the absence of chiral edge state for an  $\mathbf{x}$ - $\mathbf{y}$  opened TI film stands firmly, and the  
 1003 non-vanishing longitudinal conductance measured has to be induced by the side-surface  
 1004 states of a topological insulator, and the signal becomes non-zero only when the chemical  
 1005 potential is fine-tuned to avoid falling in the finite-size gap  $\sim \lambda_{\parallel}/L_z$  of the side surface.

#### 1006 5.4 MnBi<sub>2</sub>Te<sub>4</sub> film: even and odd number of magnetic layers

1007 The first intrinsic antiferromagnetic topological insulator [112], MnBi<sub>2</sub>Te<sub>4</sub> (Te-Bi-Te-Mn-  
 1008 Te-Bi-Te) [129–131], is composed of septuple layers (SLs), with out-of-plane intralayer



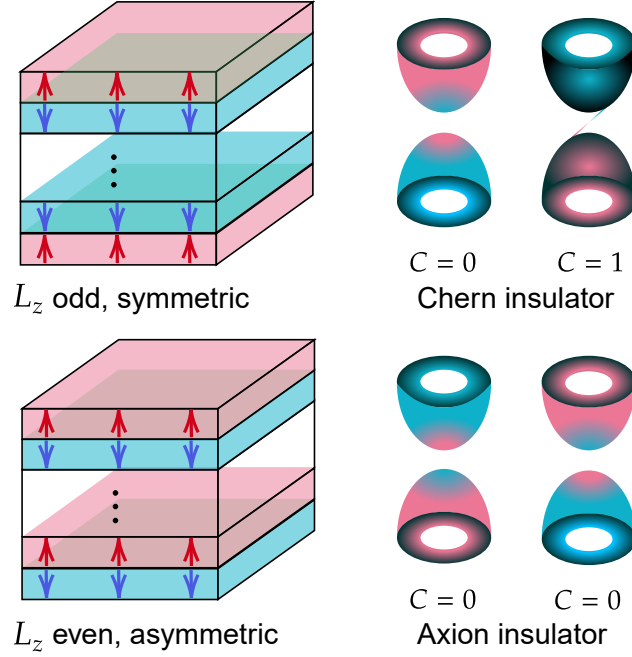


Figure 19: Schematic diagram of the anti-ferromagnetic topological insulator films  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  with the magnetic moments along the  $\mathbf{z}$  axis. Up: Odd layer number film with net ferromagnetism and symmetric Zeeman distribution, which corresponds to a non-trivial Chern insulator; Down: Even layer number film without net ferromagnetism and antisymmetric Zeeman distribution, which corresponds to the axion insulator with two trivially gapped Dirac cones.

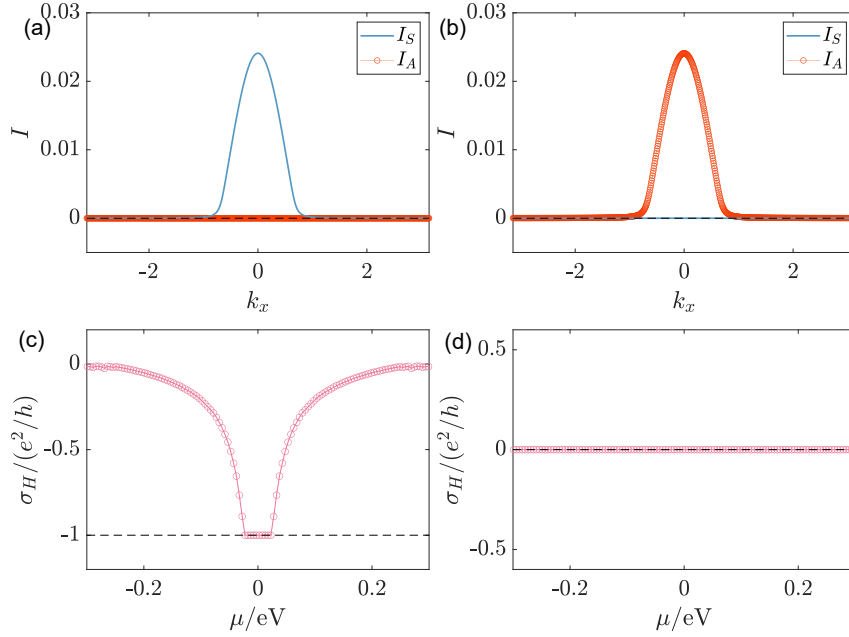


Figure 20: Left (right) pictures are for  $L_z = 19$  (18) anti-ferromagnetic TI film as an odd (even) one. The Zeeman strength is chosen to be  $|\mathbf{V}_z| = 0.1$  eV. (a) (b) Calculated  $I_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$  for the effective model. (c) (d) Calculated Hall conductance from magnetic TI film Hamiltonian.

1009 ferromagnetism and interlayer anti-ferromagnetism, known as the A-type AFM state. It  
 1010 is predicted and shown that with odd or even SL layer numbers, the material will exhibit  
 1011 quantum anomalous Hall effect [109, 110, 132–134] or the axion insulating phase [110, 135],  
 1012 respectively. Here, based on the lowest four-band model and the discussed Chern and  
 1013 axion insulator pictures, we can explain these two phenomena in a simple and elegant  
 1014 way.

1015 The combination of layer-number-oddity determined (anti-)symmetric Zeeman distri-  
 1016 bution and the localized nature of surface states leads to two qualitatively distinct physical  
 1017 pictures. As revealed in the schematic diagram Fig. 19, when the layer number  $L_z$  is odd,  
 1018 the Zeeman distribution is symmetric with parallel polarization of the outermost top and  
 1019 bottom Zeeman field direction, and vice versa. Based on the symmetry analysis, two cases  
 1020 are identified.

#### 1021 5.4.1 Odd layer: Chern insulator

1022 In this case

$$\begin{cases} I_S > 0 \\ I_A = 0 \end{cases}, L_z \bmod 2 = 1, \quad (110)$$

1023 with the maximum value of  $I_S$  centralized around  $\Gamma$  as shown in Fig. 20(a), and its sign  
 1024 is controlled by the outermost layer Zeeman field direction, given by the fact that the low  
 1025 energy states around  $\Gamma$  are localized near two surfaces.  $I_S$  almost vanishes for large  $k$  since  
 1026 the high energy states emerge into bulk and distribute diffusely, which leads to the can-  
 1027 cellation of  $I_S$  integral counting on the interlayer antiferromagnetism. Discussion above  
 1028 classifies the odd SL  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  films into Chern insulator phase, as now  $\tilde{m}_\chi = I_S + \chi|m|$   
 1029 following Eq. (97), with  $\text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(\Gamma)) = \text{sgn}(I_S) > 0$ ,  $\text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(M)) = \chi$ , and  $\tilde{m}_-$  changes  
 1030 signs at  $\Gamma$  and  $M$  which gives rise to a unit Chern number, while  $\tilde{m}_+$  is trivially gapped.  
 1031 Totally, the odd-layer  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  stands as a Chern insulator with unit Hall plateau, as  
 1032 revealed in Fig. 20(c), where the relatively narrow quantized Hall plateau for the quantum  
 1033 anomalous Hall insulator phase is due to the second-outermost-layer Zeeman field which  
 1034 owns an inverse polarization direction compared with the outermost field by the interlayer  
 1035 anti-ferromagnetic nature, and thus weakens the  $I_S$  integral at the  $\Gamma$  point, whose ampli-  
 1036 tude is recognized as the band gap which measures the width of the quantized plateau  
 1037 when the chemical potential shifts.

#### 1038 5.4.2 Even layer: axion insulator

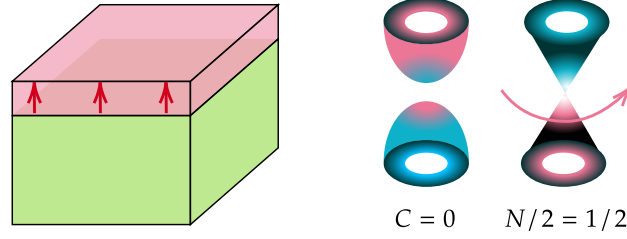
1039 In this case

$$\begin{cases} I_S = 0 \\ I_A > 0 \end{cases}, L_z \bmod 2 = 0, \quad (111)$$

1040 with the maximum value of  $I_A$  centralized around  $\Gamma$  as shown in Fig. 20(b), which classifies  
 1041 the even SL  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  films into axion insulator phase, as now  $\tilde{m}_\chi = \chi\sqrt{m^2 + I_A^2}$  following  
 1042 Eq. (108), with  $\text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(\Gamma)) = \text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(M)) = \chi$ , and both become trivial since they do  
 1043 not change signs. Totally, the even-layer  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$  shares zero Hall plateau revealed in  
 1044 Fig. 20(d).

### 1045 5.5 Half-quantized anomalous Hall effect: a semi-magnetic film

1046 From a model point of view, there should exist a search for the phase characterized  
 1047 by a domain-wall separating the axion insulator ( $|I_A(\mathbf{0})| > |I_S(\mathbf{0})|$ ) and Chern insula-  
 1048 tor ( $|I_A(\mathbf{0})| < |I_S(\mathbf{0})|$ ), and that comes to the celebrated half-quantized anomalous Hall



Magnetism at One-Surface Only

Figure 21: Schematic diagram of the half-quantized anomalous Hall effect. In this case only one side of the TI film is immersed with magnetism. The topological property is revealed by one trivially gapped Dirac cone and a gapless Dirac fermion that carries half-quantized Hall conductivity.

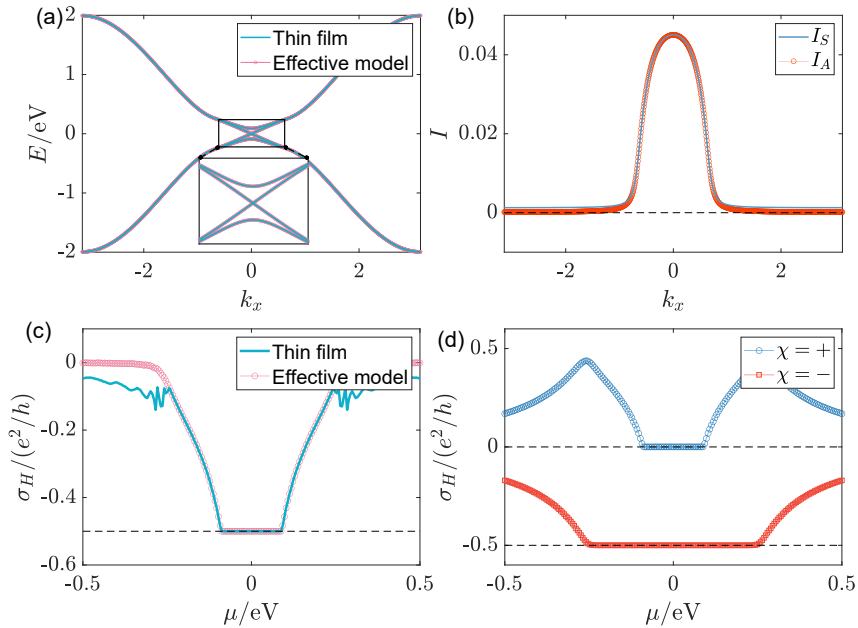


Figure 22: Half-quantized anomalous Hall metal: total layer number  $L_z = 19$  with top-2-layer Zeeman field  $V_z^t = 0.1$  eV. (a) Comparison of band structure from the lowest four bands of TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (b) Calculated  $I_S(\mathbf{k})$  and  $I_A(\mathbf{k})$ . (c) Calculated Hall conductance from TI film model and effective four-band Hamiltonian. (d) Hall conductance for  $\chi = \pm$ .

1049 phase [31, 52, 53] with condition  $|I_S| = |I_A|$  inside the parity-invariant regime. Configu-  
 1050 rationally, this corresponds to a semi-magnetic TI with a Zeeman field applied on only  
 1051 one side, as illustrated in Fig. 21. The corresponding numerical results are presented in  
 1052 Fig. 22.

1053 Another motivation for searching such a phase lies deeply in the lattice realization of  
 1054 a single Dirac fermion, which serves as a basis for the lattice gauge theory [136, 137]. The  
 1055 Nielsen-Ninomiya theorem [29, 30], however, imposes strong constraints on this realization.  
 1056 Tremendous approaches have been proposed like the Wilson fermion [4, 34], the SLAC  
 1057 fermion [35, 138, 139], the Tan fermion [140, 141], etc. These realizations either break one  
 1058 or more conditions required by the fermion-doubling theorem, such as symmetry or locality,  
 1059 or evade the physical requirements like existence of first order derivative of wavefunction  
 1060 and finite bandwidth on lattice.

1061 In this context, by introducing magnetism to gap out surface states of one Dirac cone  
 1062 through magnetism, the remaining gapless Dirac cone, as depicted in Fig. 22(a), essentially  
 1063 serves as one lattice realization of a single Dirac fermion. As stated, the gapless Dirac cone  
 1064 on lattice has to boil one or more conditions required by the fermion-doubling problem, and  
 1065 it is the 2D parity symmetry together with the locality that are broken. To avoid doubling  
 1066 caused by periodicity of Brillouin zone, the mass term of this gapless Dirac fermion has to  
 1067 contain non-vanishing bulk-like high-energy part, as captured by Eq. (11), which breaks the  
 1068 parity symmetry explicitly, while the vanishing low energy mass preserves the symmetry.  
 1069 Such a low-energy symmetry-preserving while high-energy symmetry-breaking term shares  
 1070 similarity with the ‘quantum anomaly’ [47, 66–71] in field theory, specifically the parity  
 1071 anomaly in this case. However, the gapless Dirac fermion appeared here manifests itself  
 1072 as a regularized complete condensed matter system with explicit symmetry breaking at  
 1073 high-energy, which should be distinguished from the spontaneous symmetry breaking case  
 1074 under the frame of quantum anomaly. The locality principle is violated by the massless  
 1075 to massive transition.

1076 The gapless Dirac fermion, identified as the band with gapless surface states contributes  
 1077 a half-quantized Hall conductance. From Fig. 22 (d), the  $\chi = +$  band is trivial with  
 1078 zero-Hall plateau inside the Zeeman gap, i.e., the Zeeman gapped band is trivial, while  
 1079 the  $\chi = -$  band contains a relatively large Hall plateau quantized to  $-e^2/2h$ , which is  
 1080 bounded by the TI bulk gap and corresponds to the Hall conductance contributed from the  
 1081 high-energy part of the gapless Dirac band [31]. To explain this behavior, it is important  
 1082 to note that we now have  $I \equiv I_S = I_A > 0$  around the Dirac point revealed in Fig. 22 (b)  
 1083 (valid in the parity invariant regime bounded by  $k_c$ ), and the effective masses become,  
 1084 according to Eq. (81),

$$\tilde{m}_\chi = I(\mathbf{k}) + \chi \sqrt{m^2(\mathbf{k}) + I^2(\mathbf{k})}, \quad (112)$$

1085 from which we see that  $\tilde{m}_+ > 0$  holds for any  $\mathbf{k}$  and is trivial, while

$$\tilde{m}_- = \begin{cases} 0, & k < k_c \\ I - \sqrt{m^2 + I^2} \sim -|m(k)|, & k > k_c \end{cases}, \quad (113)$$

1086 which is nontrivial and offers us with a half-quantized Hall conductance within the regime  
 1087  $k < k_c$ , as read from Eq. (38).

1088 To realize this phase generally, we need  $|I_S(\mathbf{k})| = |I_A(\mathbf{k})|$  when  $k < k_c$ . Under the  
 1089 situation, one specifies the  $\chi$  such satisfying that

$$-\chi I_S(k < k_c) = |I_A(k < k_c)|, \quad (114)$$

1090 which gives the gaps according to Eq. (82) that  $\Delta_\chi = 0$  while  $\Delta_{\bar{\chi}} = 4|I_A(\mathbf{0})|$ , i.e., one  
 1091 gapless band plus one gapped band. For the gapped band, the Chern number description

1092 still works and gives

$$C_{\tilde{\chi}} = -\tilde{\chi} \Theta(-2|I_A(\mathbf{0})|) = 0, \quad (115)$$

1093 while for the gapless band, we can not use Chern number to define its topology in principle,  
1094 since it describes a metallic phase with a non-vanishing Fermi surface. Nevertheless, the  
1095 effective masses now have property

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{m}_{\chi}(k < k_c) = 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{\tilde{\chi}}(k < k_c) = 2\tilde{\chi}|I_A(k)| \end{cases}, \quad (116)$$

1096 then combined with the high-energy condition  $\tilde{m}_{\chi}(\pi, \pi) \sim \chi |m(\pi, \pi)|$ , one obtains that

$$\begin{cases} \sigma_H^{\chi} = \frac{\chi}{2} \frac{e^2}{h} \\ \sigma_H^{\tilde{\chi}} = 0 \end{cases}, \quad |\mu| < 2|I_A(\mathbf{0})|, \quad (117)$$

1097 in line with Eq. (38), i.e., the gapless Dirac cone provides half-quantized Hall conductance,  
1098 accompanied by a trivially gapped cone. This phenomenon is known as the half-quantized  
1099 anomalous Hall effect [31, 52, 53], and is experimentally observed in Cr-doped (Bi, Sb)<sub>2</sub>Te<sub>3</sub>  
1100 system. It is important to note that the chemical potential should lie within the magnetic  
1101 gapped band to avoid non-quantized contributions from the trivial  $\tilde{\chi}$  band. Addition-  
1102 ally, the weak Zeeman field presumption ensures that the Zeeman gap, which is smaller  
1103 than the bulk gap, does not exceed the energy limit of the parity-invariant regime. The  
1104 metallic nature of the non-trivial gapless Dirac fermion indicates that the system stays  
1105 inside a metallic topological phase. Notice that the non-trivial gapless band requirement  
1106 Eq. (114) gives  $\chi = -\text{sgn}(I) = -\text{sgn}(V)$  with  $I = I_S(\mathbf{0})$  and  $V = V_S^{\text{top}}$ , and we can write  
1107 down the asymptotic Hamiltonian for this band as

$$H_{\text{half}} \sim \lambda_{\parallel} (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + \text{sgn}(V) m(k) \sigma_z, \quad (118)$$

1108 counting on the fact that  $m(k) \leq 0$ . This effective Hamiltonian offers with half-quantized  
1109 Hall conductance  $-\text{sgn}(V)e^2/2h$ , which does not depend on whether the magnetism is  
1110 put at the top or bottom of TI film, but only on its polarization direction. Under an  
1111 external magnetic field, such a single gapless Dirac fermion will step into the quantum  
1112 Hall regime [52, 93] and exhibits quantized Hall conductance whenever an integer number  
1113 of Landau levels become fully filled [142]. Especially, the ‘anomaly’ contribution will  
1114 manifest itself to compensate the half quantization contributed from the lowest Landau  
1115 level, so as to keep the integer value of Chern invariant for this gapped Landau level  
1116 system.

## 1117 5.6 Phase diagram

1118 To appreciate the details of the phases mentioned, especially regarding the phase transi-  
1119 tions among, we go back to the effective model and assume that the immersed depth of top  
1120 and bottom Zeeman field, if exists, is relatively longer than the characteristic exponen-  
1121 tially decaying length of surface states while being much smaller than the film thickness,  
1122 with uniform strength for the top or bottom field. Then we can adopt the substitution

$$I_{S/A} \rightarrow V_{S/A} = V_{S/A}^{\text{top}}. \quad (119)$$

1123 And the effective model reads

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{H}_{\chi} = \lambda_{\parallel} (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y a) \sigma_y) + \tilde{m}_{\chi}(k) \sigma_z \\ \tilde{m}_{\chi}(k) = V_S + \chi \sqrt{m^2(k) + V_A^2} \\ m(k) = \Theta(-m_0(k)) m_0(k) \\ m_0(k) = m_0 - 4t_{\parallel} \left( \sin^2 \frac{k_x a}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{k_y b}{2} \right) \end{cases}, \quad (120)$$

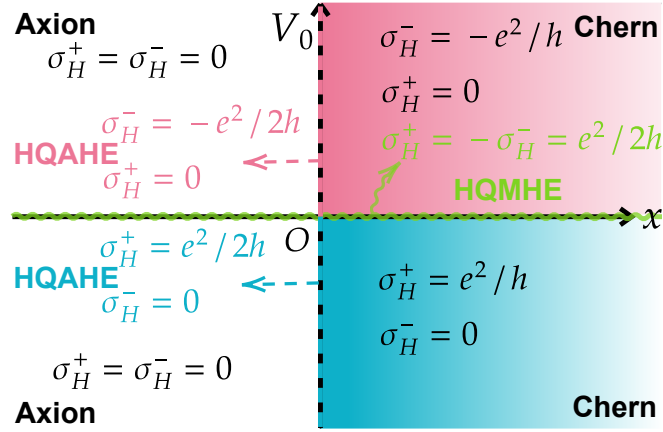


Figure 23: Phase diagram of topological phases with weak field. Four distinct phases have been labelled as Chern insulator phase in the first and fourth quadrants differed by sign of Hall conductance, Axion insulator phase in the second and third quadrants, the half quantum mirror Hall effect (HQMHE) along the  $\mathbf{x}$ -axis (indicated by the green wave line), and the half-quantized anomalous Hall effect (HQAHE) along  $\mathbf{V}_0^+$  and  $\mathbf{V}_0^-$  rays (indicated by red or blue dashed lines) differed by sign of Hall conductance. The effectiveness of the phase diagram should be confirmed for chemical potential lying in **both** the parity invariant regime **and**  $\otimes$  (smaller) Zeeman gap of surface states, and the Zeeman strength should be constrained to be relatively weak compared with the bulk gap, while playing its role mainly at top and bottom surfaces under the discussed frame.

1124 from which one reads the Hall conductance from Eq. (83) as (in the Zeeman gap or the  
1125 parity invariant regime)

$$\sigma_H^\chi = \frac{e^2}{h} \frac{1}{2} [\chi - \text{sgn}(V_S + \chi|V_A|)]. \quad (121)$$

1126 Now let us introduce the top Zeeman strength  $\mathbf{V}_z^{\text{top}} = \mathbf{V}_0$ , and the bottom Zeeman strength  
1127  $\mathbf{V}_z^{\text{bottom}} = \mathbf{x}\mathbf{V}_0$  described by the collaboration between  $\mathbf{V}_z^{\text{top}}$  and a phenomenological pa-  
1128 rameter  $\mathbf{x}$  characterizing their relative strength. Then accordingly we have

$$\begin{cases} V_S = V_0 \frac{1+x}{2} \\ V_A = V_0 \frac{1-x}{2} \end{cases}, \quad (122)$$

1129 which gives further the Hall conductance

$$\sigma_H^\chi = \frac{e^2}{h} \frac{1}{2} \left[ \chi - \text{sgn}(V_0) \text{sgn} \left( \frac{1+x}{2} + \chi \text{sgn}(V_0) \left| \frac{1-x}{2} \right| \right) \right], \quad (123)$$

1130 whose dependence on parameters  $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{V}_0)$  are presented in Fig. 23 as a phase diagram  
1131 emphasizing the role the relative strength  $\mathbf{x}$  plays here. Notice that we have defined  
1132  $\text{sgn}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  here, corresponding to realistic physical phenomenon when  $\mathbf{V}_0 = \mathbf{0}$ . From the  
1133 diagram, except for  $\mathbf{V}_0 = \mathbf{0}$  line, which represents a pure topological insulator film with  
1134 half quantum mirror Hall effect, it is always  $\mathbf{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$  side that gives rise to phases with  
1135 non-vanishing Hall conductance, belonging to either Chern insulator or half-quantized  
1136 anomalous Hall metal phase, while the  $\mathbf{x} < \mathbf{0}$  side termed as axion insulator phase always  
1137 contains two trivially gapped Dirac cones/fermions.

1138 Focusing on the phase transition, we observe that a phase characterized by an anoma-  
 1139 lous half-quantized index always emerges upon the integer index phase transition. This  
 1140 phenomenon echoes transitions observed in integer quantum Hall systems [103,143], where  
 1141 the renormalization group flow diagram exhibits a generic fixed point with half-quantized  
 1142 Hall conductance and finite longitudinal conductance, suggesting a phase transition in 2D  
 1143 from a field theoretical point of view. However, the physics here should differ, as the  
 1144 robustness of the gapless surface state is protected by the bulk and corresponding surface  
 1145 time-reversal symmetry as an intrinsic feature of 3D strong topological insulators [17]. Put  
 1146 the statement differently, the additional dimension in our system exhibits robust topolog-  
 1147 ical/geometric effects, making it plausible that phases characterized by half-integers here  
 1148 are more likely to be symmetry-protected metallic topological phases, while this protection  
 1149 only occurs in a finite regime over the whole Brillouin zone. Especially, the half QAHE  
 1150 here is protected by a parity invariant regime, and is different from a critical quantum  
 1151 Hall transition phase without protection from any non-conformal symmetries.

1152 In the phase diagram we draw, the line of half quantum mirror Hall effect is crossed  
 1153 when transitioning between two Chern insulator phases characterized by opposite Chern  
 1154 numbers, since such a phase transition relies on changing of Zeeman polarization direction,  
 1155 thus crossing  $\mathbf{V}_0 = \mathbf{0}$  where half quantum mirror Hall effect happens. A similar thing  
 1156 happens for the transition between axion insulator phases differed by Zeeman direction.  
 1157 On the other hand, lines representing half QAHE are crossed when stepping between the  
 1158 Chern insulator and axion insulator phases, with the sign of Hall conductance determined  
 1159 by Zeeman direction.

## 1160 6 Topological phases with strong field

1161 A more extensive and complex regime exists beyond the weak Zeeman field approxima-  
 1162 tion, and the criterion tells that the topological phase appearing here can not be simply  
 1163 described under  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  framework. In this scenario, we step into the strong field regime,  
 1164 where the appearance of  $\mathbf{n} \geq \mathbf{2}$  cones is unavoidable. Surprisingly, the inter-Dirac-cone  
 1165 interaction can sometimes play the ultimate role deciding the topological property of the  
 1166 system. It is in such situations that our effective mass picture from Eq. (66) and Eq. (67)  
 1167 serves as the ultimate criterion for the topological property in the system.

### 1168 6.1 Metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect: a film with a magnetic sandwich 1169 structure

1170 One other novel metallic topological phase bearing a pair of gapless Dirac fermions has  
 1171 been recently proposed [32], which shows a quantized Hall conductivity of unit that origi-  
 1172 nates from two metallic bands, each with one-half quantum. To further enhance our  
 1173 understanding of magnetic topological phases, the key findings related to this phase are  
 1174 summarized below.

1175 The schematic diagram is shown in Fig. 24. We set total layer number  $L_z = 22$  which  
 1176 is even, and the  $\mathbf{z}$ -symmetric site positions read

$$1177 \quad l_z = \pm \frac{1}{2}, \dots, \pm \frac{L_z - 1}{2}. \quad (124)$$

1177 Accordingly,  $\mathbf{z}$ -symmetric Zeeman field in magnetically doped layers at the middle of the  
 1178 TI film is set as

$$1178 \quad V_z(l_z) = \begin{cases} \alpha t_\perp, & l_z = \pm 1/2, \dots, \pm(m_z - 1)/2 \\ \mathbf{0}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}, \quad (125)$$

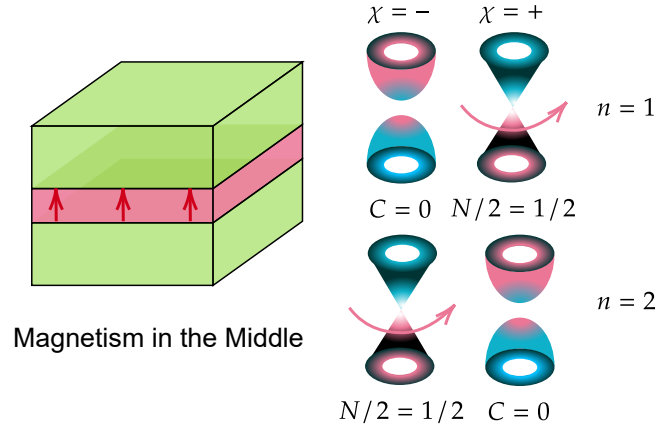


Figure 24: Schematic diagram of the metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect. In the case a relatively strong out-of-plane ordered magnetism exists in the middle of the film. The topological property of the system is reflected by a pair of gapless Dirac cones with the same high-energy mass sign, each carrying half-quantized Hall conductivity.

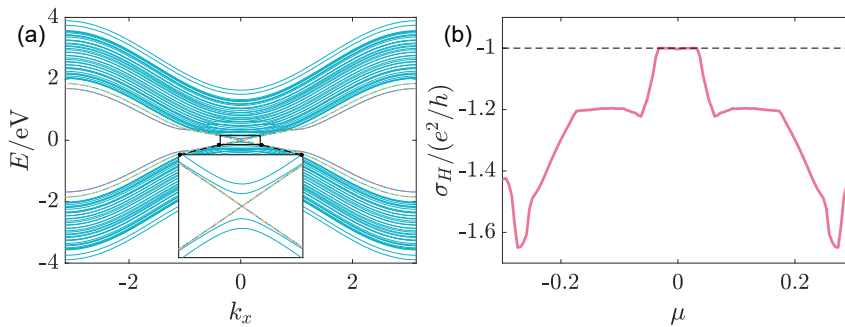


Figure 25: (a) The band structure near the  $\Gamma$  point with  $\mathbf{k}_y = \mathbf{0}$  with the presence of magnetic doping ( $\alpha = 0.9$ ). The gapless dispersions for the surface states are doubly degenerate, as shown by the red and yellow lines. (b) Corresponding Hall conductivity as a function of the chemical potential  $\mu$  at  $\alpha = 0.9$ . The thickness  $L_z = 22$  and the magnetic layers  $m_z = 6$ .



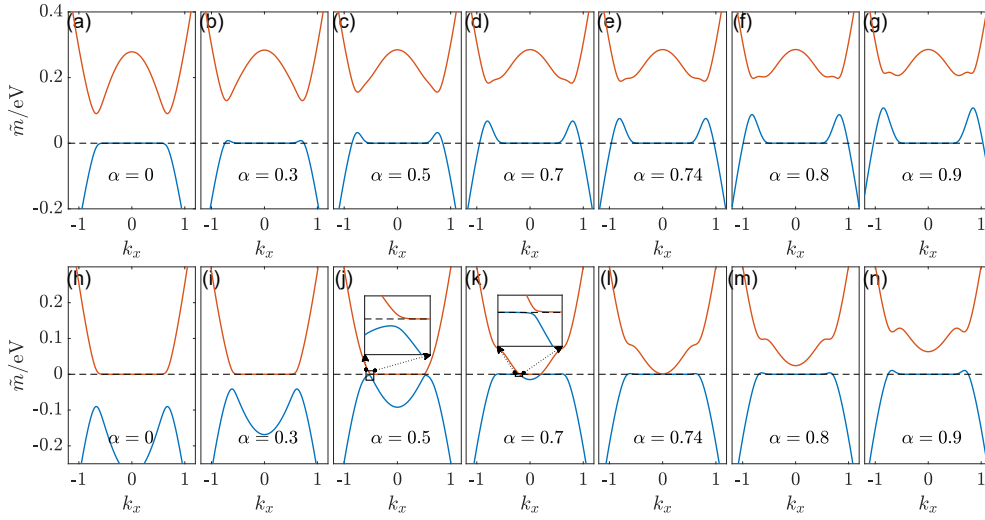


Figure 26: The evolution of the effective mass  $\tilde{m}_{n,\chi}(\mathbf{k}_x, \mathbf{k}_y = \mathbf{0})$  ( $n = 1, 2$ ). (a)~(g) and (h)~(n) show lowest-two **effective masses** varying with changing Zeeman field strength  $\alpha$  belonging to set  $[0, 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, 0.74, 0.8, 0.9]$  for  $\chi = +$  and  $\chi = -$ , respectively. (a) (g) (h) (n) have already been shown as Fig. 3 in the main text but with a finer structure here. Adapted from [32].

1179 with magnetic layer number  $m_z = 6$ . By  $\mathbf{z}$ -symmetric  $V_S(\mathbf{l}_z) = V_z(\mathbf{l}_z)$ ,  $V_A(\mathbf{l}_z) = \mathbf{0}$ , the  
 1180 projection only contains  $\mathbf{I}_S$  term proportional to  $\alpha$ . Then we bring  $\alpha$  to the front explicitly  
 1181 as

$$\mathbf{I}_S(\alpha, \mathbf{k})\tau_0\sigma_z \mapsto \alpha\mathbf{I}_S(\mathbf{k})\tau_0\sigma_z, \quad (126)$$

1182 with  $\mathbf{I}_S(\alpha = 1, \mathbf{k}) \mapsto \mathbf{I}_S(\mathbf{k})$  as a re-definition.

1183 The metallic feature and quantized Hall conductivity nature are revealed in Fig. 25.  
 1184 The band structure of the film is shown in the presence of strong enough magnetism  
 1185 ( $\alpha = 0.9$ ), with a pair of massless Dirac fermions. The pairing nature is reflected by the  
 1186 double degeneracy of band dispersion near the  $\Gamma$  point, as labelled by the red and yellow  
 1187 lines. The unbroken surface states picture is possible due to the localized nature of the  
 1188 surface states inside the bulk-gap, which is not affected by the far-away magnetism in  
 1189 the middle of the film. Meanwhile, a quantized Hall conductivity is observed, when the  
 1190 chemical potential lies inside both the bulk and magnetic gap. And as we shall see later,  
 1191 essentially the quantization comes from the two gapless Dirac fermions, each sharing a  
 1192 half-quantized Hall conductivity with the same sign, based on which we further identify  
 1193 that the effect is not only superficially metallic, but originates from such metallic bands.  
 1194 And it is in this circumstance that we term this new phase as the ‘metallic quantized  
 1195 anomalous Hall effect’ (metallic QAHE), indicating that it differs from the conventional  
 1196 QAHE, aka the Chern insulator in an insulating phase.

1197 Attributed to the mass exchange mechanism over the effective mass picture presented in  
 1198 Section 4, such a topological phase transition with the increasing of  $\alpha$  as Zeeman strength  
 1199 in the middle can be explained. Absorbing the  $\alpha$ -dependent Zeeman term into the one-  
 1200 dimensional Hamiltonian separated from the TI film leads to an  $\alpha$ -dependent 1-D Hamil-  
 1201 tonian  $\mathbf{H}_{1d}(\alpha)$ , with  $\mathbf{H}_{1d}(\alpha = 0)$  coming back to the 1-D Hamiltonian extracted from TI  
 1202 film and solved exactly before (see section 2.2). Projecting  $\mathbf{H}_{1d}(\alpha)$  over solutions of  $\mathbf{H}_{1d}(\mathbf{0})$   
 1203 leads to  $(\bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} m_n \tau_z + \alpha \mathbf{I}_S(\mathbf{k})\tau_0)\sigma_z$ , and further diagonalizing this provides a bijection  
 1204 which maps the projected Hamiltonian form into the mass term  $\bigoplus_{n=1, \chi=\pm}^{L_z} \tilde{m}_{n,\chi}(\mathbf{k}, \alpha)\sigma_z$   
 1205 (see section 4.1). Notice that both  $\sigma_z$  and  $\tau_z$  here are good quantum numbers, as spin

1206 and mirror indices ( $\chi = \pm$ ), respectively. Confining to the subspace with  $\sigma_z = +$ , we  
 1207 could then track the evolution and interaction of the mass terms  $\tilde{m}_{n,\chi}$  between  $n = 1$   
 1208 and  $n = 2$  blocks with increasing  $\alpha$  for given  $\chi$ . As shown in Fig. 26,  $\tilde{m}_{n,+}(n = 1, 2)$   
 1209 maintain their shapes increasing  $\alpha$ , while  $\tilde{m}_{n,-}(n = 1, 2)$  have effectively exchanged their  
 1210 high-energy parts through the low-energy mass exchange, which leads to the high-energy  
 1211 mass sign change of the gapless Dirac cone, and alters its Hall conductivity from  $e^2/2h$  to  
 1212  $-e^2/2h$ , when Fermi surface lies inside the parity invariant regime. Then combined with  
 1213 the unaltered  $-e^2/2h$  from  $\tilde{m}_{1,+}$ , totally a topological phase transition happens, driving  
 1214 the system from zero Hall conductivity to quantized Hall conductivity, with Hall contri-  
 1215 bution coming from two metallic bands, which makes the system a metallic topological  
 1216 phase. We can identify

$$\alpha_c \approx 0.74 \quad (127)$$

1217 in this case to indicate  $0 \rightarrow -1$  plateau transition. Notice that although we have explicitly  
 1218 exploited the  $\mathbf{z}$ -mirror symmetry to separate our effective masses into two groups, this  
 1219 symmetry consideration is not necessary here and the metallic QAHE is not protected by  
 1220 the symmetry. For example, from Eq. (66), Eq. (67) we see clearly that a general Zeeman  
 1221 field configuration can still generate  $2L_z$  independent Dirac masses, and if we place a  
 1222 strong enough Zeeman field in the middle of the film deviating from the symmetric case,  
 1223 still we can see the effect with unit Hall plateau.

1224 The key difference between our metallic QAHE and the conventional QAHE or equiv-  
 1225 alently the Chern insulator lies in the unconventional bulk boundary correspondence. As  
 1226 discussed in [31], the half-quantized Hall conductivity bears no chiral edge states, while its  
 1227 corresponding boundary physics lies in the existence of the chiral current, which is indeed  
 1228 a bulk states contribution and decays algebraically along the metallic surface, starting  
 1229 from the middle magnetic zone where time-reversal symmetry is broken most severely.

### 1230 6.1.1 A qualitatively model with $n = 1, 2$

1231 A qualitative understanding of the phenomenon within a cut-off approximation based on  
 1232 the  $n = 1, 2$  blocks can be deduced. In the mass exchange picture above, we have used the  
 1233 fully diagonalized  $\tilde{m}_{1,2}$  to illustrate the physics behind, while the picture with only  $n = 1$   
 1234 involved based on the weak Zeeman field approximation breaks down. This is essentially  
 1235 because, the weak field approximation heavily relies on effect the magnetism has upon the  
 1236 surface states, which is not the case here since the magnetism in the middle will not directly  
 1237 affect the surface states, and were there to be any physics effects, they must be conducted  
 1238 through the bulk states, whose wavefunction has maximal overlap with the magnetic areas.  
 1239 Here, the metallic QAHE is just the first non-trivial case of such kind, where the inter- $n$   
 1240 blocks interaction conducted through magnetism is deterministic, and luckily, we have  
 1241 found a way to directly observe the overall effect by a second diagonalization, yielding the  
 1242 effective masses  $\tilde{m}_n$ . While the process and the results are straightforward and conclusive,  
 1243 it will be more satisfying if a simplified model exists and grasps the core of physics even  
 1244 qualitatively. Interestingly, a model incorporating the  $n = 1, 2$  blocks plays a crucial role  
 1245 in achieving this.

1246 For simplicity, we consider the symmetric Zeeman field in the middle, and by preserving  
 1247  $n = 1, 2$ , the mass terms read

$$M(\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} m_1 & \\ & m_2 \end{pmatrix} \tau_z + \alpha \begin{pmatrix} I_S^{11} & I_S^{12} \\ I_S^{21} & I_S^{22} \end{pmatrix} \tau_0, \quad (128)$$

1248 with  $\mathbf{k}$ -dependence in  $m_n$  and  $I_S$  terms. The Hamiltonian for  $n = 1, 2$  reads

$$H^{n=1,2}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel} \rho_0 \tau_0 (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + M \sigma_z, \quad (129)$$

1249 with  $\rho$  another pseudo-spin degrees of freedom for two blocks.

1250 Following the effective mass treatment, we further block-diagonalize  $H^{1,2}$  into  $2 \times 2$  sub-  
1251 blocks. Notice that again the projected mirror operator  $\tau_z$  in  $M$  serves as a good quantum  
1252 number due to the chosen symmetric Zeeman distribution, then a split  $M = \Theta_\chi M_\chi (\chi = \pm)$   
1253 can be made, so does that for the Hamiltonian  $H^{1,2} = \Theta_\chi H_\chi^{1,2}$ , where

$$H_\chi^{1,2} = \lambda_{\parallel} \rho_0 (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + \alpha \operatorname{Re}(I_S^{12})(k) \rho_x \sigma_z - \alpha \operatorname{Im}(I_S^{12})(k) \rho_y \sigma_z \\ + E_\chi(k) \rho_0 \sigma_z + \Delta_\chi(k) \rho_z \sigma_z, \quad (130)$$

1254 with

$$\begin{cases} E_\chi = [\chi(m_1 + m_2) + \alpha(I_S^{11} + I_S^{22})]/2 \\ \Delta_\chi = [\chi(m_1 - m_2) + \alpha(I_S^{11} - I_S^{22})]/2 \end{cases}. \quad (131)$$

1255 Clearly, diagonalization in  $\rho$ -space is accessible without altering the linear part, which  
1256 leads to

$$\tilde{H}_{\chi\zeta}^{1,2} = \lambda_{\parallel} (\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + \tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta} \sigma_z, \quad (132)$$

1257 where

$$\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta} = (E_\chi(k) + \zeta \Lambda_\chi(k)) \sigma_z, \quad \chi, \zeta = \pm, \quad (133)$$

1258 with  $\Lambda_\chi = \sqrt{\Delta_\chi^2 + \alpha^2 |I_S^{12}|^2}$  defined. This is reached by a unitary transformation  $U_\chi = U_2^\chi U_1^\chi$   
1259 for each  $\chi$ , where  $U_2^\chi = e^{i\rho_x \theta_2^\chi}$ ,  $U_1^\chi = e^{i\rho_y \theta_1^\chi}$ , with definitions  $\tan 2\theta_1^\chi = \alpha \operatorname{Re}(I_S^{12})/\Delta_\chi$ ,  
1260  $\tan 2\theta_2^\chi = \alpha \operatorname{Im}(I_S^{12})/\delta_\chi$ ,  $\delta_\chi = \sqrt{\alpha^2 \operatorname{Re}(I_S^{12})^2 + \Delta_\chi^2}$ .

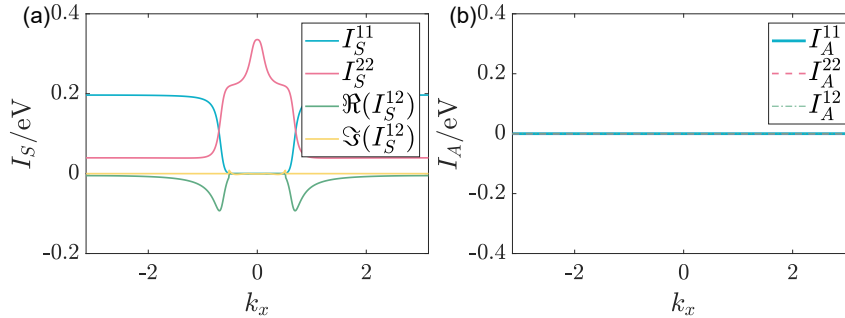


Figure 27:  $I_{S/A}^{11}, I_{S/A}^{22}$  and  $I_{S/A}^{12}$  calculated with total layer number  $L_z = 22$  and middle Zeeman layer number  $m_z = 6$ . Re-plotted from [32].

1261 Now we choose case  $\alpha > 0$  so that  $\alpha I_S^{nn} > 0$  to illustrate the physics. Topological phase  
1262 transition happens when  $\alpha I_S^{22} > m_2(0) > 0$  (for  $m_2(0) > 0$  see Fig. 4) with the help of  
1263  $I_S^{12}$ . In the case now, we identify the Hall conductivity for each sub-block as

$$\sigma_H^{\chi\zeta} = \frac{e^2}{2h} \left[ \operatorname{sgn}(\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(M)) - \operatorname{sgn}(\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(k_F^{\chi,\zeta})) \right], \quad (134)$$

1264 with  $\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(k_F^{\chi,\zeta})$  recognized as  $\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}$  at Fermi surface of the band, and for an insulating  
1265 band with Fermi level inside the gap, it is  $\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(0)$ . For unification and simplicity, we will  
1266 always assume Fermi level to lie inside insulating gap and the parity invariant regime of  
1267 a gapless band near  $\Gamma$  point so to always recognize  $k_F = 0$ , and those worrying about the  
1268 singular gapless Dirac point for the metallic case can always take the unambiguous second

1269 limit in Section 3.5. Then by treating

$$\begin{cases} m_1(0) = 0, m_2(0) > 0 \\ -m_1(M) \approx m_2(M) \gg \alpha |I_S(M)| > 0 \\ I_S^{11}(0) = I_S^{12}(0) = 0, I_S^{22}(0) > 0 \\ I_A = 0 \end{cases},$$

1270 where quantities  $I_{S/A}$  can be read from Fig. 27, we can write

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(0) = \frac{\chi m_2(0) + \alpha I_S^{22}(0)}{2} + \zeta \left| \frac{\chi m_2(0) + \alpha I_S^{22}(0)}{2} \right| \\ \tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(M) \approx \zeta m_2(M) \end{cases}. \quad (135)$$

1271 Clearly,  $\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(M)$  are almost unchanged since the projected Zeeman field is not that strong  
1272 here, and the Hall conductivity formula is reduced into

$$\sigma_H^{\chi\zeta} = \frac{e^2}{2h} [\zeta - \text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(0))]. \quad (136)$$

1273 For  $\tilde{m}_{\chi,\zeta}(0)$  two cases should be distinguished. When  $\alpha I_S^{22}(0) < m_2(0)$ ,

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{m}_{++}(0) = m_2(0) + \alpha I_S^{22}(0) > 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{+-}(0) = 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{-+}(0) = 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{--}(0) = -m_2(0) + \alpha I_S^{22}(0) < 0 \end{cases}, \quad (137)$$

1274 and we obtain

$$\begin{cases} \sigma_H^{++} = 0 \\ \sigma_H^{+-} = -e^2/2h \\ \sigma_H^{-+} = e^2/2h \\ \sigma_H^{--} = 0 \end{cases}, \quad (138)$$

1275 with total Hall conductivity zero. Interestingly, in this case the symmetric magnetism in  
1276 the middle does not even quantitatively change the half quantum mirror Hall phase. On  
1277 the other hand, for  $\alpha I_S^{22}(0) > m_2(0)$ ,

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{m}_{++}(0) = m_2(0) + \alpha I_S^{22}(0) > 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{+-}(0) = 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{-+}(0) = -m_2(0) + \alpha I_S^{22}(0) > 0 \\ \tilde{m}_{--}(0) = 0 \end{cases}, \quad (139)$$

1278 and we obtain

$$\begin{cases} \sigma_H^{++} = 0 \\ \sigma_H^{+-} = -e^2/2h \\ \sigma_H^{-+} = 0 \\ \sigma_H^{--} = -e^2/2h \end{cases}, \quad (140)$$

1279 with total Hall conductivity unit upon  $e^2/h$ . This unit is fundamentally different the  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{1}$   
1280 as Chern insulator case, since here  $\mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1}/2 + \mathbf{1}/2$ , with non-vanishing contribution coming  
1281 from two metallic bands describing gapless Dirac fermions. It is recognized that the phase

1282 transition happens only within  $\chi = -$  sub-blocks, where  $\zeta = \pm$  Dirac fermions exchange  
 1283 their low-energy mass when crossing the qualitative phase transition point  $I_S^{22}(\mathbf{0}) = m_2(\mathbf{0})$ ,  
 1284 and by treating approximately  $I_S^{22} \approx \alpha t_\perp$ ,  $m_2(\mathbf{0}) \approx m_0$ , we see the qualitative critical point  
 1285 as

$$\alpha_c^{\text{quali}} = \frac{m_0}{t_\perp} \approx 0.7, \quad (141)$$

1286 which is close to the numerical result.

1287  $I_S^{12}$  as inter- $n$  Dirac fermions coupling plays an important role here. Without this term,  
 1288  $n = 1$  and  $n = 2$  Dirac fermions will totally be decoupled from Eq. (128), which makes  
 1289 the mass exchange between  $\zeta$ -Dirac fermions with  $\chi = -$  impossible. With this term,  
 1290 which serves as an avoid-crossing source between  $\zeta$ -Dirac fermions masses, and obtains its  
 1291 maximum nearly after surface to bulk transition of  $n = 1$  gapless Dirac fermions, we see  
 1292 that the crossing behavior of  $\tilde{m}_{-, \zeta}$  at  $\Delta_-(\mathbf{k}_{\text{cross}}) = \mathbf{0}$  is prohibited by a non-zero  $I_S^{12}(\mathbf{k}_{\text{cross}})$ ,  
 1293 and the two bands are forced to exchange masses before and after  $\mathbf{k}_{\text{cross}}$ . This is possible  
 1294 since  $\Delta_-(\mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{0}$  requires that  $I_S^{11}(\mathbf{k}) > I_S^{22}(\mathbf{k})$ , which can happen only when  $n = 1$  surface  
 1295 states emerge into the bulk at  $\mathbf{k} > \mathbf{k}_c$ , where  $I_S^{12}(\mathbf{k})$  is also non-zero.

### 1296 6.1.2 Lower threshold by decreasing the mass in the middle

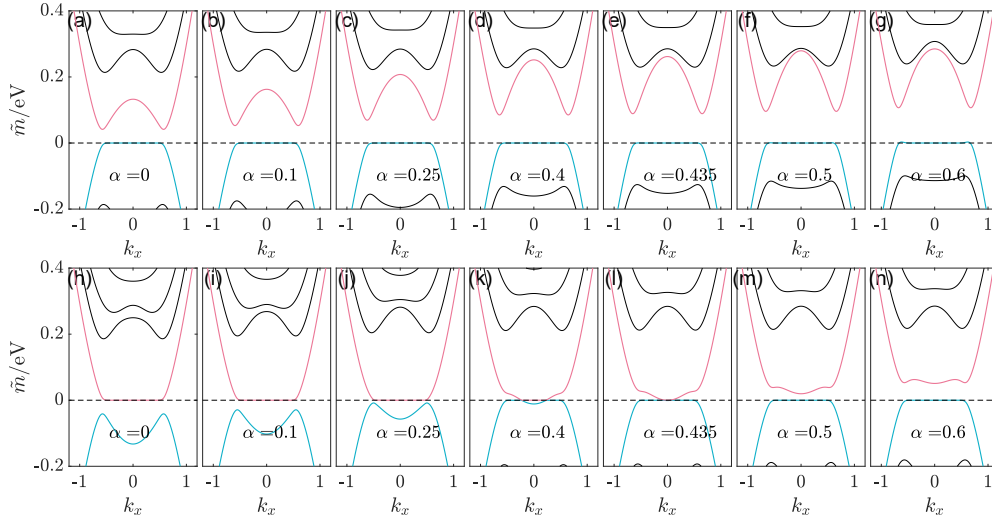


Figure 28: The evolution of the effective mass  $\tilde{m}_{n,\chi}(k_x, k_y = 0)$ . (a)~(g) and (h)~(n) emphasize lowest-two ( $n = 1, 2$ ) effective masses in red and blue colors, varying with changing Zeeman field strength  $\alpha$  belonging to set  $[0, 0.1, 0.25, 0.4, 0.435, 0.5, 0.6]$  for  $\chi = +$  and  $\chi = -$ , respectively. Still, we take total layer number  $L_z = 22$  and middle Zeeman layer number  $m_z = 6$ , while the difference with Fig. 26 is that here the middle-layer mass is reduced to  $\tilde{m}_0 = 0.08$  eV.

1297 It was pointed out [144, 145] that magnetic doping can reduce and even drive the bulk  
 1298 band gap  $m_0$  of TI into a trivial one, and this effect plays a positive role in realizing  
 1299 the metallic QAHE indeed. To illustrate this, consider a simplified scenario where the  
 1300 bulk mass of TI, initially  $m_0 = 0.28$  eV, is reduced to  $\tilde{m}_0 = 0.08$  eV in the magnetically  
 1301 doped region. Then by comparing the detailed effective mass evolution in Fig. 28 with the  
 1302 original case in Fig. 26, we observe that the critical point  $\alpha_c$  decreases to approximately  
 1303  $\alpha_c \approx 0.435$ . Such a reduction is beneficial for the experimental realization of the metallic

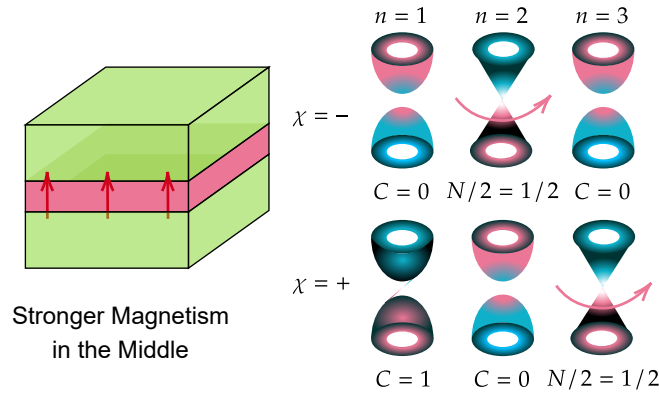


Figure 29: Schematic diagram of a stronger magnetism in the middle of the topological insulator film. The system now contains a pair of gapless Dirac fermions with the same high-energy mass signs, together with one non-trivial gapped Dirac cone with unit Chern number. The contributions of these Dirac fermions are synergistic.

1304 QAHE. Moreover, since the decrease in the critical  $\alpha$  is positively correlated with the re-  
 1305 duction of doped middle layer mass, while and this mass reduction itself is also positively  
 1306 correlated with the increase in concentration of magnetic doping, it is expected that the  
 1307 metallic QAHE can be achieved with a significantly lower threshold of magnetic doping  
 1308 concentration in practice. Note that if the middle layers are driven to a trivial state with  
 1309 a negative bulk mass  $\tilde{m}_0 < 0$ , and are simultaneously considered nonconductive, the sys-  
 1310 tem effectively splits into two semi-magnetic TI films, a trivial metallic QAHE comprising  
 1311 two non-communicative half QAHEs with the same half-quantized Hall conductance is  
 1312 obtained. It is important to recognize that the above calculation assumes an oversimpli-  
 1313 fied relationship between doping concentration and the reduced mass. A more accurate  
 1314 determination of the modified critical point requires a realistic model and a self-consistent  
 1315 calculation.

### 1316 6.1.3 Stronger field in the middle

1317 Encouraged by the mass exchange series diagrams, a natural question to ask is what hap-  
 1318 pens when we increase Zeeman strength in the middle further. A first step answer to the  
 1319 ask is we will meet a system with higher Hall conductivity. For instance, after increasing  
 1320 Zeeman field strength to  $\alpha = 1.2$ , we see from Fig. 30(a) that the Hall conductivity of the  
 1321 system becomes  $-2e^2/h$  now. For the reason behind, we again look on the effective masses  
 1322 presented in Fig. 30(b), where a pair of gapless Dirac cones and one non-trivial gapped  
 1323 Dirac cone with mass sign reversal emerge, and essentially, from Eq. 38 and Eq. 42, they  
 1324 contribute synergistically to the Hall conductivity, i.e.,  $1/2 + 1/2 + 1 = 2$  units over  $-e^2/h$ .  
 1325 A careful trace over the effective mass evolution upon increasing  $\alpha$  reveals that, at this  
 1326 time,  $n = 3$  band of  $\chi = +$  closes and reopens the gap, during which an avoid crossing  
 1327 happens and forces it to exchange low energy mass with  $n = 1$  band of  $\chi = +$ , which leads  
 1328 to the result above.

## 1329 6.2 Higher Chern Number Insulator

1330 Based on magnetic TI film, several proposals to realize higher Chern number have been  
 1331 provided [83, 134, 145], among which one theoretical proposal [83] utilizes one-by-one sub-  
 1332 band inversion to illustrate the increasing Chern number process. Here the physics behind

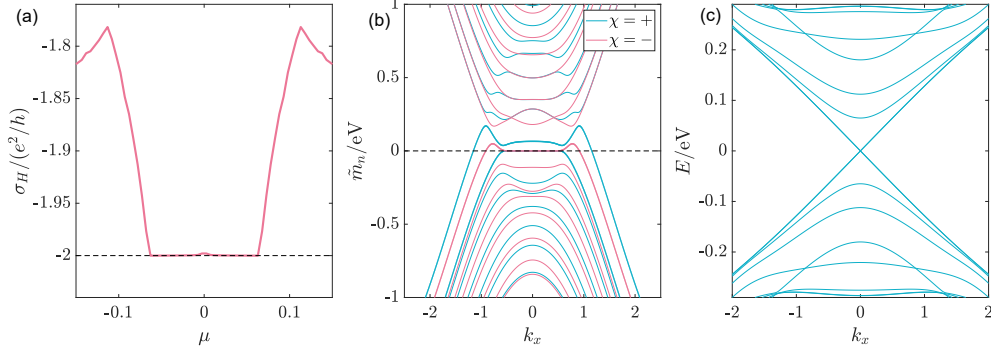


Figure 30: (a) Hall conductance of a metallic QAHE with a stronger magnetic field in the middle. (b) Momentum-dependent effective masses of Dirac fermions in Eq. (68). The masses for non-trivial bands have been stressed in the same color. (c) Band dispersion for the system, where the gapless bands at  $\Gamma$  are doubly degenerate. Specifically, here the total layer number of TI film is  $L_z = 22$ , the magnetic layer number is the middle is  $6$ , and the Zeeman strength is  $V = \alpha t_\perp$  with  $\alpha = 1.2$ .

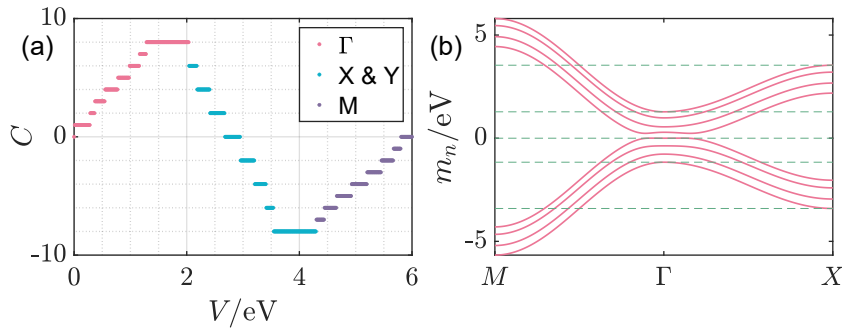


Figure 31: (a) Chern numbers of magnetic TI film with varying uniform Zeeman field strength  $V$ . Red, blue and purple dots represent Chern numbers caused by  $\Gamma$ ,  $X/Y$  and  $M$  mass inversions, respectively. (b) Calculated mass  $m_n(\mathbf{k})$  along  $M-\Gamma-X$  high symmetry line. Green guidance lines have been imposed to reveal either zero-energy surface state plateau or relative magnitude of masses among high symmetry points. Total layer number  $L_z = 8$ .

1333 is brought out in a more strict way with a similar picture.

1334 Still we firstly present an example shown in Fig. 31(a) as the Chern numbers of a  
 1335 uniformly magnetized TI film with total layer number  $L_z = 8$ . The algorithm follows [146].  
 1336 With increasing the uniform Zeeman strength  $V$ , the change of Chern numbers experiences  
 1337 three stages: For the relatively weak Zeeman field, the Chern number plateau increases  
 1338 step by step, from  $0$  to  $8$ , as revealed by red dots; For the Zeeman field with medium  
 1339 strength, the Chern number plateau drops from  $8$  to  $-8$  with  $2$  as a step, illustrated by  
 1340 blue dots; Finally for the relatively strong Zeeman field, the Chern number plateau again  
 1341 increases from  $-8$  to  $0$  one-by-one, shown by purple dots. Notice that under our parameter  
 1342 choice we have  $m_1(\pi, 0) \sim 2$  eV and  $m_1(\pi, \pi) \sim 4.3$  eV.

1343 The Hamiltonian Eq. (70) now best suits to describe the phenomenon, where the  
 1344 uniform Zeeman field makes it exact to preserve diagonal blocks only. However, due to  
 1345 the largely adjustable magnitude of the Zeeman field, Eq. (83) becomes inapplicable here,  
 1346 and a more general formula following Eq. (45) is written as [27, 50, 101]

$$C_\chi = -\frac{\text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(X))}{2} [\text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(\Gamma)) - \text{sgn}(\tilde{m}_\chi(M))], \quad (142)$$

1347 i.e., it accounts for the mass sign-change induced topological phase transition at  $X = (\pi, 0)$ .  
 1348 In this case, the  $\chi$ -Chern number for each  $n = 1, \dots, L_z$  is written as

$$C_\chi^n = -\frac{\text{sgn}(V + \chi m_n(X))}{2} [\text{sgn}(V + \chi m_n(\Gamma)) - \text{sgn}(V + \chi m_n(M))]. \quad (143)$$

1349 In our case,  $|m_n(\Gamma)| < |m_n(X)| < |m_n(M)|$ , and admittedly, all bulk bands  $n \geq 2$  are  
 1350 trivial by which we mean  $m_n(\Gamma/X/M)$  share the same sign, then focusing on one band  
 1351 and increasing  $V$  from zero, we see that when  $V$  just crosses  $|m_n(\Gamma)|$ , the band with  
 1352  $\chi m_n < 0$  increases its Chern number from zero to one; continuing to increase  $V$  so that it  
 1353 is bigger than  $|m_n(X)|$ , the corresponding Chern number reverses its sign from  $1$  to  $-1$ ; and  
 1354 finally when  $V$  goes beyond the bandwidth  $|m_n(M)|$ , the band goes back to its trivial phase  
 1355 with zero Chern number. Notice that under our assumption  $V > 0$ , the band  $\tilde{\chi} m_n > 0$  is  
 1356 always trivial.

1357 It is now clear that the sub-band mass-inversion at  $\Gamma$ ,  $X$  and  $M$  points are responsible  
 1358 for the change of Chern numbers, or equivalently the anomalous Hall plateaus with quan-  
 1359 tum units of conductance revealed in Fig. 31(a). As presented in Fig. 31(b), the masses  
 1360  $m_n(\mathbf{k})$  now share the property that  $\max[m_n(\Gamma)] < \min[m_n(X)]$ ,  $\max[m_n(X)] < \min[m_n(M)]$ ,  
 1361 as revealed by the green guidance lines. Then the Chern number change can be divided  
 1362 into three regions with increasing Zeeman field  $V$  labelled in Fig. 31(a), i.e., the  $\Gamma$ -mass  
 1363 inverse region, the  $X(Y)$ -mass inverse region and the  $M$ -mass inverse region, without cross-  
 1364 ing among distinct regions. The physics happening in each region is exactly  $L_z = 8$  copies  
 1365 illustrated above with increasing  $V$ , i.e., the Chern number increases one-by-one in the  
 1366  $\Gamma$ -region each time Zeeman field  $V$  crosses some  $|m_n(\Gamma)|$  and makes the band non-trivial,  
 1367 until it reaches its maximum  $C_{\max} = L_z = 8$ , then decreases two-by-two in the  $X$ -region  
 1368 once  $V$  gets bigger than some  $|m_n(X)|$ , where topological phase transition happens with  
 1369 both sides non-trivial, until bottom touching  $C_{\min} = L_z - 2L_z = -8$ , and finally the Chern  
 1370 number goes back to zero step-by-step in the  $M$ -region as long as  $V$  becomes bigger than  
 1371 some bandwidth  $|m_n(M)|$  and makes corresponding band trivial again. The inverse pro-  
 1372 cess happens for an opposite Zeeman field, with Chern number reversing its sign.

### 1373 6.3 Cooperation between middle and surfaces

1374 Similar to the approach of gapping out surface(s) of a topological insulator film, we can  
 1375 gap out the surface states in metallic QAHE with surface magnetism polarized along  $\mathbf{z}$



1376 direction. In this sense we explore the cooperation between magnetism in the middle and  
1377 at surface(s).

1378 The surface magnetism is chosen to be weak compared to the smallest gap in metallic  
1379 QAHE, and it can thus be treated again as a perturbation. This is simply because gapping  
1380 out the gapless surface needs no threshold over surface magnetic strength. Based on such  
1381 a picture, the physics beneath comes from perturbing two gapless Dirac fermions with  
1382 the same high-energy mass signs in metallic QAHE, whose simplified model Hamiltonian  
1383 reads  $\mathbf{H}_{\text{MQAHE}} = \mathbf{h} \oplus \mathbf{h}$  with single Dirac cone Hamiltonian

$$\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a)\sigma_x + \sin(k_y b)\sigma_y) + \text{sgn}(V^{\text{mid}})\tilde{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{k})\sigma_z, \quad (144)$$

1384 with  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta(-\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k}))\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k})$  identified. Considering now in metallic QAHE, the middle  
1385 Zeeman field does not affect the gapless surface states, then the projection of top and  
1386 bottom Zeeman fields onto the mirror-symmetric surface states can still be written as  
1387  $I_S(\mathbf{k})\tau_0\sigma_z - I_A(\mathbf{k})\tau_y\sigma_z$ . And by approximation, we recognize  $I_S \equiv V_S^{\text{top}}$ ,  $I_A \equiv V_A^{\text{top}}$  so that  
1388 the phenomenological mass terms read

$$\text{sgn}(V^{\text{mid}})\tilde{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{k})\tau_0 + V_S^{\text{top}}\tau_0 + V_A^{\text{top}}\tau_y, \quad (145)$$

1389 which can be diagonalized without affecting linear term as

$$\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\zeta}(\mathbf{k}) = \text{sgn}(V^{\text{mid}})\tilde{\mathbf{m}}(\mathbf{k}) + V_S^{\text{top}} + \zeta V_A^{\text{top}}, \quad (146)$$

1390 with  $\zeta = \pm$ . Attributing to Eq. (42), we have for a gapped Dirac cone with  $V_S^{\text{top}} + \zeta V_A^{\text{top}} \neq 0$ ,

$$\mathbf{C}^{\zeta} = \frac{1}{2} [\text{sgn}(V_S^{\text{top}} + \zeta V_A^{\text{top}}) + \text{sgn}(V^{\text{mid}})], \quad (147)$$

1391 while for a gapless Dirac cone with  $V_S^{\text{top}} + \zeta V_A^{\text{top}} = 0$ , according to Eq. (38) we have

$$\mathbf{N}^{\zeta} = \text{sgn}(V^{\text{mid}}), \quad (148)$$

1392 and the corresponding Hall conductivity reads  $\sigma_H^{\zeta} = -\mathbf{C}e^2/h$  or  $\sigma_H^{\zeta} = -\mathbf{N}e^2/2h$  depending  
1393 on gapped or gapless nature, which serves as the starting point for analyzing phases below.

1394 For an instance, adding gap opening  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman field at both top and bottom surfaces  
1395 parallel to magnetic polarization in the metallic QAHE system leads to  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{2}$  state, com-  
1396 posed of a pair of non-trivial gapped Dirac fermions each carrying unit Chern number, as  
1397 represented in Fig. 32. Such  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{2}$  state has been observed [145] in a similar magnetic  
1398 structure with an alternate explanation based on the assumption that magnetic layers  
1399 dividing topological insulator film do not hold side surface states, which then turns the  
1400 magnetic insulator-topological insulator multilayer structure into individual  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{1}$  insula-  
1401 tors, each of which can be explained by the discussion over Chern insulator in the weak  
1402 Zeeman field section. Here instead we assume that the magnetism does not alter the bulk  
1403 gap  $\mathbf{m}_0$  very much, so that the side surface state goes throughout the zone with magnetism.  
1404 The calculated Hall conductivity for one configuration following the assumption is shown  
1405 in Fig. 33(a), where a  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{2}$  plateau is presented inside the top/bottom Zeeman gap for  
1406 surface states. The system is thus identified as a Chern insulator by the gapped band  
1407 structure shown in Fig. 33(c). For simplicity, we have chosen a symmetric surface Zeeman  
1408 distribution with  $V_A^{\text{top}} = 0$ . Now since  $V_S^{\text{top}} > 0, V^{\text{mid}} > 0$ , we have mass sign changes at  
1409  $\Gamma$  and  $\mathbf{M}$  for both surface states as revealed by mass configurations in Fig. 33(b), and by  
1410 Eq. (147)

$$\mathbf{C}^+ = \mathbf{C}^- = \mathbf{1}, \quad (149)$$

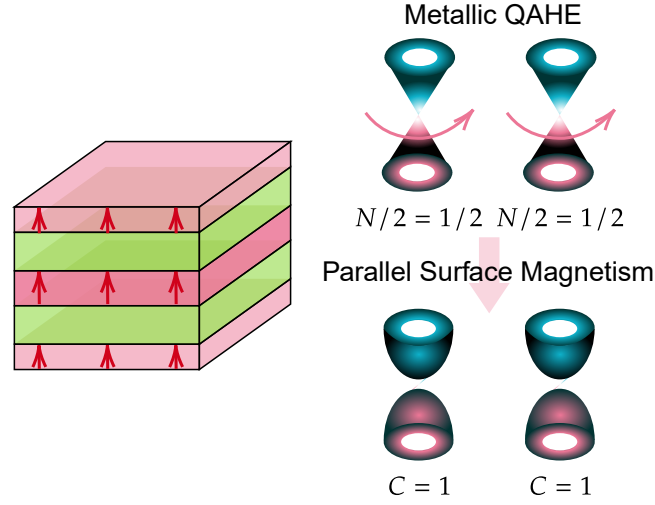


Figure 32: Schematic diagram of the metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect with top and bottom symmetric magnetism parallel to that in the middle. In the case a relatively strong Zeeman field exists in the middle of the film, while top and bottom states are gapped out by a weak Zeeman field. The system is now an insulator again, and contains a pair of gapped Dirac cones, each carrying Chern number one.

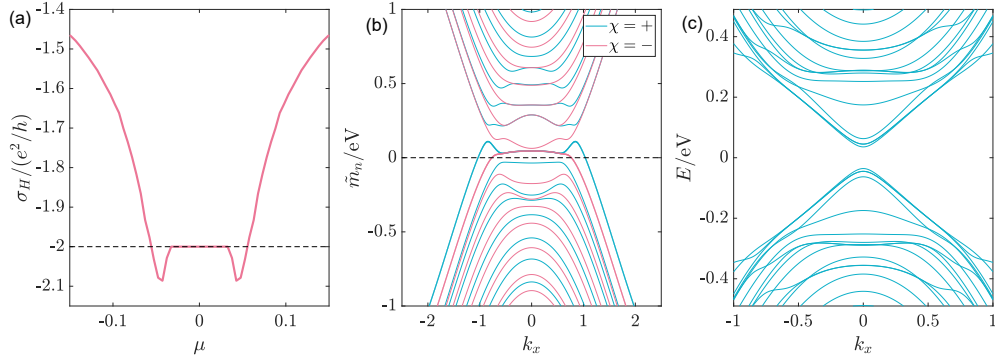


Figure 33: (a) Hall conductivity of a metallic QAHE with its top and bottom surface states also gapped by magnetism, whose polarization direction is parallel to the field in the middle. (b) Momentum-dependent effective masses of Dirac fermions in Eq. (68). Due to the symmetric Zeeman configurations, masses are again divided into mirror classes by  $\chi = \pm$ . The masses for gapped surface states have been stressed in the same color. (c) The band structure of the system. Specifically, here the total layer number of TI film is  $L_z = 22$ , the magnetic layer numbers at top, middle and bottom are **2**, **6**, **2**, with mean Zeeman strengths chosen to be  $V^{\text{top}} = 0.05$  eV,  $V^{\text{mid}} = \alpha t_{\perp}$  with  $\alpha = 0.9$ , and  $V^{\text{bot}} = 0.05$  eV, respectively.

1411 which leads to totally a  $\mathbf{C} = 2$  state.

1412 Now let us switch down  $\mathbf{V}^{\text{top}}$ , which makes  $\mathbf{V}_S^{\text{top}} = -\mathbf{V}_A^{\text{top}} > \mathbf{0}$ , accordingly we have  
 1413  $\mathbf{N}^+ = \mathbf{1}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}^- = \mathbf{1}$ , which corresponds to a system with Hall conductivity  $3e^2/2h$ . Further we  
 1414 re-add  $\mathbf{V}^{\text{top}} = -\mathbf{V}^{\text{bottom}} < \mathbf{0}$ , which leads to  $\mathbf{V}_S^{\text{top}} = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{V}_A^{\text{top}} > \mathbf{0}$ , and we see  $\mathbf{C}^+ = \mathbf{1}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}^- = \mathbf{0}$ ,  
 1415 which makes the system a Chern insulator again with unit Chern number. Next we  
 1416 reverse  $\mathbf{V}^{\text{bottom}}$  to minus, and  $\mathbf{V}_S^{\text{top}} < \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{V}_A^{\text{top}} = \mathbf{0}$ , which makes the system trivial with  
 1417  $\mathbf{C}^+ = \mathbf{C}^- = \mathbf{0}$ . Finally, we switch down again  $\mathbf{V}^{\text{top}}$ , and now  $\mathbf{V}_S^{\text{top}} = -\mathbf{V}_A^{\text{top}} < \mathbf{0}$ , accordingly  
 1418 we have  $\mathbf{N}^+ = \mathbf{1}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}^- = \mathbf{0}$ , which leaves half quantization of Hall conductivity in the system.

1419 Totally, we see that there exist five more additional topologically distinct phases upon  
 1420 tuning surface magnetism of metallic QAHE, with Hall conductivities quantized into  
 1421  $2, 3/2, 1, 1/2$  and  $\mathbf{0}$  over quantum units, respectively. The topological properties of these  
 1422 additional phases can be easily verified by calculating their Hall conductivities, or reading  
 1423 from their effective mass pictures. The signs of Hall conductivities are inverted once we  
 1424 overturn magnetism at both surfaces and in the middle.

## 1425 7 Discussion and conclusion

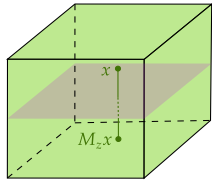
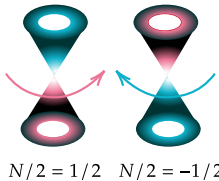
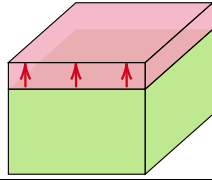
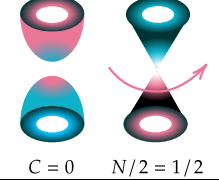
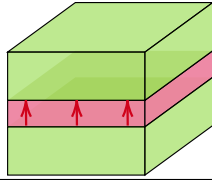
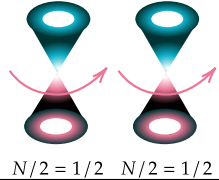
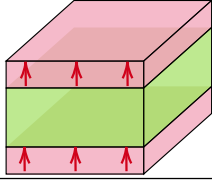
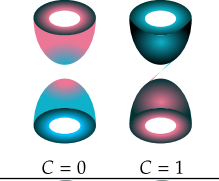
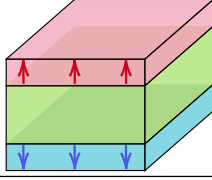
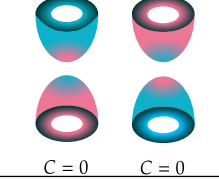
1426 It is quite remarkable and surprising that so many topologically distinct phases already  
 1427 emerge under such a relatively simple model describing a magnetic topological insulator  
 1428 film. At the core of physics, however, such a descriptive and predictive power of the  
 1429 frame should be estimated. Although, admittedly infinite possibilities exist to explain the  
 1430 phenomena, down to the ground several principles, such as symmetry, topology, emergence  
 1431 and conciseness, have almost fixed the formalism we are willing to adapt in addressing  
 1432 the problem. In our focused questions, particularly regarding the Hall conductances for  
 1433 different species of Dirac fermions in the system, the property of several points in the  
 1434 spectrum is already sufficient to solely determine the result. And to endow physical  
 1435 meaning to these points, we name the points to represent low-energy and anomaly. The  
 1436 invariance of laws of physics then suggests that, once we have grasped these key ingredients,  
 1437 the complexities of the more intricate components will naturally fall into place. Below we  
 1438 summarize key points in our paper and extend to further discussions.

1439 The introduced local unitary transformation in  $\mathbf{k}$ -space, based on the exact solution,  
 1440 unveils the existence of a pair of gapless Dirac fermions and a series of massive gapped  
 1441 Dirac fermions in a 3D topological insulator film, when viewed as 2D system effectively.  
 1442 This comprehensive understanding of the constitutes inside the TI film is paramount, ~~in~~  
 1443 ~~our discussion.~~ as our derivation here is a complete extension of the previous work on  
 1444 projection of TI surface states [36–38], with the inclusion of the high-energy part of the  
 1445 surface bands in the full 2D Brillouin zone and higher massive Dirac fermions for bulk  
 1446 bands.

1447 The Hall conductivity associated with the gapless and gapped Dirac fermions in the  
 1448 TI film are  $\pm e^2/2h$  and  $\mathbf{0}$ , respectively. This results in a half-quantized topological phase,  
 1449 serving as a metallic partner to the insulating quantum spin Hall effect, namely, the half  
 1450 quantum mirror Hall effect in TI film itself [with a mirror symmetry](#). The pairing feature  
 1451 of the gapless Dirac fermions in half quantum mirror Hall effect is summarized in Table  
 1452 3. It is noteworthy that their existence here is not a result from the Nielsen-Ninomiya  
 1453 theorem, since they are two separable fermions in whole Brillouin zone; rather, it is the  
 1454 mirror symmetry along the opened direction of the TI film that requires the doubling —  
 1455 symmetric and antisymmetric.

1456 The mass term of the gapless Dirac fermion in our study is a regularized one that  
 1457 can be directly expressed on a lattice. However, this regularization comes at the cost of

Table 3: Summation of main magnetic topological phases discussed.  $C$  represents Chern number for a fully occupied band, while  $N$  is the half-integer index for a metallic band. The Hall conductance  $\sigma_H = -(C + N/2)(e^2/h)$  when the chemical potential lies inside the insulating gap and symmetry constrained regime of the metallic band.

Name of phase	Magnetic structure	Responsible Dirac fermion(s)	Topological index
Half quantum mirror Hall effect			$N^{\text{mirror}} = 1 - (-1) = 2$
Half quantized anomalous Hall effect			$C = 0, N = 1$
Metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect			$N = 1 + 1 = 2$
Chern insulator			$C = 0 + 1 = 1$
Axion insulator			$C = 0 + 0 = 0$

1458 introducing an explicitly parity-symmetry-breaking term away from the Dirac point. As a  
 1459 result, the gapless Dirac fermion remains massless at low-energy but becomes massive at  
 1460 high-energy. In the article, a Heaviside Theta function is utilized to grasp the feature of  
 1461 such a mass term, which exhibits long-range algebraic decay with the first power modified  
 1462 by a sinusoidal function, when Fourier transformed into real space. Specifically, it con-  
 1463 tains a hopping term proportional to  $\sim \sin(\Delta l)/\Delta l$ , with  $\Delta l$  being the distance between  
 1464 sites. Not accidentally, a similar hopping term with the same algebraic decaying order  
 1465 has been used as one way to construct single gapless Dirac fermion on lattice, known as  
 1466 the SLAC fermion [35, 138, 139]. However, it is important to note that in our theory, the  
 1467 phenomenological evasion of locality by the gapless Dirac fermion, residing in effectively  
 1468 2D space, is a consequence of the bulk property of the 3D TI, where locality is preserved.  
 1469 This phenomenon underscores the concept of bulk-boundary correspondence and suggests  
 1470 that a seemingly unphysical theory in lower dimensions can be attributed to a projection  
 1471 from a higher-dimensional theory. It is noteworthy that the procedure employed here  
 1472 is different from a dimensional reduction, and is not an effective field theory because the  
 1473 Dirac fermion naturally obtains completeness on lattice. Rather, a better similarity can be  
 1474 shared with the quasicrystal containing aperiodic order, which can arise from projections  
 1475 of higher-dimensional periodic lattices [147]. Essentially, both the gapless Dirac fermion  
 1476 containing surface states of a 3D TI, and the quasicrystal from tilings, are physically  
 1477 realizable systems.

1478 The formalism introduced here, involving the transformation of a confined spatially  
 1479  $(n + 1)$ D Dirac Hamiltonian into  $n$ D Dirac fermions through the construction of a local  
 1480 unitary matrix using solutions from a decomposed 1D Hamiltonian along the confined  
 1481 direction, can be generalized to arbitrary dimensions, with the aid of Clifford algebra. In  
 1482 particular, initiating from a 4D space modified Dirac equation, a unitary transformation  
 1483 yields a pair of gapless Dirac fermions effectively in 3D space. This extension holds the  
 1484 potential to enhance our comprehension of the chiral anomaly in the system [56, 57]. What  
 1485 is more, given that the high-energy components of the two Dirac fermions explicitly break  
 1486 the chiral symmetry, they are not obliged to be paired by violating conditions stipulated by  
 1487 the Nielsen-Ninomiya theorem. As a result, we can anticipate that when the constrained  
 1488 4D Hamiltonian becomes ‘semi-magnetic’, a single gapless Dirac fermion will be observed,  
 1489 similar to that in half QAHE.

1490 The introduced magnetism, initially presented as an out-of-plane Zeeman field at the  
 1491 mean-field level, undergoes the unitary transformation into two momentum-dependent  
 1492 matrix Higgs fields  $\mathbf{I}_{S/A}(\mathbf{k})$ , which obtain non-vanishing values along with the spontaneous  
 1493 symmetry breaking that establishes intralayer ferromagnetic order. The two fields play  
 1494 a pivotal role in generating mass to the Dirac fermions through Yukawa-like couplings.  
 1495 The nature of the magnetic structure, influencing the distribution and strength of the  
 1496 Zeeman field along the open direction, leads to the classification of several topologically  
 1497 distinct phases, including the Chern insulator, axion insulator, half-quantized anomalous  
 1498 Hall effect and metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect. A summary of their main features  
 1499 is presented in Table 3. Essentially,  $\mathbf{I}_S$  predominates in the Chern insulator and metallic  
 1500 QAHE phases,  $\mathbf{I}_A$  takes precedence in the axion insulator, while a collaborative effort  
 1501 between both  $\mathbf{I}_S$  and  $\mathbf{I}_A$  is necessary to achieve the half QAHE.

1502 In the presence of a uniform Zeeman field, the mass of each Dirac fermion in TI film  
 1503 is directly modified by a Zeeman field. By tuning the strength of magnetism, sub-band  
 1504 inversion happens step-by-step for each Dirac fermion, whose Chern character changes cor-  
 1505 respondingly. Summing those mass-modified Dirac fermions together gives a Chern insu-  
 1506 lator that carries jumping Hall conductance among integers in  $[-L_z, L_z]$  over the quantum  
 1507 unit  $e^2/h$ , with  $L_z$  the total layer number.

1508 With a relatively weak Zeeman field compared with the bulk gap, focusing solely on  
 1509 the  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}$  matrix elements that act on the two gapless Dirac fermions becomes feasible.  
 1510 In this scenario, only fields near the two surfaces maximally tune the topological property  
 1511 of the TI film by influencing the surface states. This approximation, referred to as the  
 1512 weak Zeeman field condition, elucidates the underlying physics behind the Chern insulator,  
 1513 axion insulator and half QAHE clearly, with Hall conductance showing  $\mathbf{1} + \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0}$  and  
 1514  $\mathbf{1}/2 + \mathbf{0}$  quantized nature upon quantum unit.

1515 Under a general strong Zeeman field, the gapped series of Dirac fermions have to be  
 1516 involved, and the  $\mathbf{n} \neq \mathbf{1}$  Higgs components can play a crucial role. The most general  
 1517 description is conducted by a further diagonalization over mass terms  $\mathbf{m}_n$  and Higgs fields  
 1518  $\mathbf{I}_{S/A}$ , and the procedure leads to effective masses  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_n$  for the Dirac fermions, which de-  
 1519 termine the topological property of the system. As discussed, the avoid-crossing between  
 1520  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_1$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_2$  leads to the formation of two gapless Dirac fermions with the same chirality  
 1521 (high-energy mass sign) in system, which bears a doublet of half quantized Hall conduc-  
 1522 tivity and leads to the metallic QAHE. Interestingly, in the case, another cut-off over  
 1523  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{1}, \mathbf{2}$  blocks can be made, since the Zeeman field applied should not alter the  $\mathbf{n} \geq \mathbf{3}$   
 1524 states dramatically.

1525 When  $\mathbf{I}_A = \mathbf{0}$ , the mirror symmetry is respected by the system, allowing for the sep-  
 1526 aration of the total Hamiltonian by the projection operator of mirror symmetry. This  
 1527 separation provides valuable insights, such as the application of mirror layer Chern num-  
 1528 ber in a Chern insulator with a unit Chern number.

1529 It is certainly reasonable but lamentable that we cannot exhaustively list all relevant  
 1530 topological phases in magnetic topological insulators in the article. The sheer multitude  
 1531 of possible magnetic distributions makes it impractical to cover every potential scenario.  
 1532 However, our work lays down a unified framework that enables the depiction of both  
 1533 discovered and yet-to-be-discovered topological phases in a uniform and consistent manner,  
 1534 grounded in the conceptualization of the grouped Dirac fermions and the associated mass  
 1535 generation mechanism. We believe that the diversity and variety of different magnetic  
 1536 configurations can lead to even richer topological phases within our framework.

1537 Furthermore, as elaborated in Section 4.2, our exploration is not confined solely to  
 1538 topological phases induced by magnetism, especially a Zeeman field in the TI film. One  
 1539 illustrative example, as highlighted earlier, involves the duality between the  $\mathbf{z}$ -Zeeman  
 1540 field  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}_z$  and a special orbital order  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_y$ . This duality has the potential to generate all  
 1541 topological phases discussed in the paper, with symmetric and antisymmetric distributions  
 1542 exchanged for the time-reversal-breaking  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_y$  field. This approach extends beyond the  
 1543 commonly studied ferromagnetism (or layer-by-layer antiferromagnetism, as observed in  
 1544 materials like  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$ ) induced quantum anomalous Hall effect (QAHE). Moreover,  
 1545 leveraging the superconducting effect, we can include the superconducting pairing field  
 1546 into the frame across all pairing symmetries. This inclusion opens avenues for exploration  
 1547 and determination of the possibilities and conditions necessary for realizing topological  
 1548 superconductors [148–151] within the solid framework we have established.

1549 An additional intriguing aspect to consider pertains to the symmetries in the system.  
 1550 The modified Dirac equation model we employed for the topological insulator film en-  
 1551 capsulates fruitful symmetries, like the standard time reversal, particle hole and chiral  
 1552 symmetries, together with the inversion symmetry in each dimension and the 1D mirror  
 1553 symmetry along each direction. Some of these symmetries play crucial roles in determining  
 1554 our solutions and topological phases in the system. For instance, in solving the separated  
 1555 1D Hamiltonian, the utilization of one-dimensional parity and chiral symmetry is essen-  
 1556 tial; the  $\mathbf{z}$ -mirror symmetry becomes decisive for the manifestation of the half quantum  
 1557 mirror Hall effect, contributing to quantized mirror Hall conductance; despite not a pro-

1558 tecting symmetry in the metallic quantized anomalous Hall effect, the ever existence of  
 1559 the same mirror symmetry helps us to cut the effective masses into two groups by their  
 1560 mirror labels and clarifies the mass exchange mechanism. It may prove worthwhile to  
 1561 contemplate a starting point Hamiltonian with lower symmetry or introduce additional  
 1562 symmetry-breaking fields to assess the stability of these effects. For instance, the half  
 1563 quantum mirror Hall effect is clearly a metallic twin partner of the quantum spin Hall  
 1564 effect, and it should also share a general  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  classification scheme depending on the time  
 1565 reversal symmetry solely. Consequently, it is worthy to give a unified expression for this  
 1566 invariant. Moreover, as we have shortly discussed, the half-quantization of the gapless  
 1567 Dirac fermion is protected by the parity invariant regime around the Dirac point, and  
 1568 indeed, this 2D parity symmetry coexists with the time reversal in our model, which  
 1569 warrants further discussion regarding their individual impacts on half-quantization. This  
 1570 exploration can be extended to encompass broader symmetries and other kinds of metallic  
 1571 topological phase classes, providing a comprehensive understanding.

1572 Besides, the exploration of disorder and interaction effects in metallic phases presents  
 1573 a rich avenue for investigation. As previously discussed, metallic topological phases inher-  
 1574 ently grapple with disorder effects on their metallic side, wherein mechanisms like skew-  
 1575 scattering and side-jump alter the transverse transport behavior [92, 95]. The stability of  
 1576 these phases against disorder, addressed through parameter renormalization, poses a signif-  
 1577 icant question, akin to considerations in their insulating counterparts [97, 152–155]. More-  
 1578 over, while the adiabatic criterion justifiably establishes a connection between a gapped  
 1579 interacting phase and a non-interacting one by preserving gap opening, it remains elu-  
 1580 sive in what way we can say something similar in those metallic phases. Clarifying how  
 1581 this linkage can be articulated in the context of these metallic phases poses an ongoing  
 1582 challenge.

1583 In short, the interplay between magnetism and topology in 3D TI film is investigated  
 1584 under a unified frame, exploiting the Dirac fermion physics and mass generating mecha-  
 1585 nism.

## 1586 Acknowledgements

1587 **Author contributions** S.Q. S. conceived the project. K.-Z. B. and B. F. performed the  
 1588 theoretical analysis and simulation. K.-Z. B. and S.Q. S. wrote the manuscript with inputs  
 1589 from all authors. All authors contributed to the discussion of the results.

1590 **Funding information** This work was supported by the National Key R&D Program of  
 1591 China under Grant No. 2019YFA0308603 and the Research Grants Council, University  
 1592 Grants Committee, Hong Kong under Grant Nos. C7012-21G and 17301823.

## 1593 A Derivation of Eq. (1a)

1594 We start from solving

$$1595 \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s}) = -is\lambda_{\perp}\partial_z\tau_x + (\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k}) + t_{\perp}\partial_z^2)\tau_z, \quad (\text{A.1})$$

1596 with  $\mathbf{s}$  defined by eigenvalue of  $\sigma_z$ . All parameters are real with  $\mathbf{m}_0(\mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{m}_0 - t_{\parallel}\mathbf{k}^2 > \mathbf{0}$   
 1597 to be the criterion for the region where surface states emerge. For the purpose of keeping  
 consistence with the lattice model in 2.2, one in fact needs to substitute parameters as

$$\lambda_{\perp} \rightarrow c\lambda_{\perp}, \lambda_{\parallel} \rightarrow a\lambda_{\parallel}, t_{\perp} \rightarrow c^2t_{\perp}, t_{\parallel} \rightarrow a^2t_{\parallel}.$$

1598 However, we would not write in that way explicitly for simplicity. Also, to make discussion  
1599 pithy, we shall omit  $\mathbf{s}$  in wavefunction below.

1600 The eigenproblem of  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$  is a second-order differential equation and allows us to set  
1601 solutions with trial function  $\phi = \phi_\xi e^{i\xi z}$ . Using  $\partial_z \phi = i\xi \phi$ ,  $\partial_z^2 \phi = -\xi^2 \phi$ , one has  
1602 equation below:

$$\begin{pmatrix} m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \xi^2 & s \lambda_\perp \xi \\ s \lambda_\perp \xi & -m_0(\mathbf{k}) + t_\perp \xi^2 \end{pmatrix} \phi = E \phi, \quad (\text{A.2})$$

1603 which readily leads to

$$E^2 - (m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \xi^2)^2 - \lambda_\perp^2 \xi^2 = 0, \quad (\text{A.3})$$

1604 and gives

$$\xi_\alpha^p = p \xi_\alpha = p \sqrt{-\frac{F}{D} + (-1)^{\alpha-1} \frac{\sqrt{R}}{D}}, \quad p = \pm, \quad \alpha = 1, 2, \quad (\text{A.4})$$

1605 where

$$D = 2t_\perp^2, \quad F = -2m_0(\mathbf{k})t_\perp + s \lambda_\perp^2, \quad R = F^2 - 2D(m_0^2(\mathbf{k}) - E^2).$$

1606 For each  $\xi_\alpha^s$ , one has

$$\phi_{\alpha p} = \begin{pmatrix} s \lambda_\perp p \xi_\alpha \\ E - m_0(\mathbf{k}) + t_\perp \xi_\alpha^2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (\text{A.5})$$

1607 and the general solution would be

$$\Phi = \sum_{\alpha p} C_{\alpha p} \phi_{\alpha p} e^{ip \xi_\alpha z}. \quad (\text{A.6})$$

1608 Now considering finite size along  $\mathbf{z}$  direction with top and bottom surfaces located at  
1609  $\pm \frac{L}{2}$ , respectively, one would have boundary condition

$$\Phi(\pm \frac{L}{2}) = 0, \quad (\text{A.7})$$

1610 applying which one would get four linear equations for coefficients

$$\mathbb{P}(C_{1+}, C_{1-}, C_{2+}, C_{2-})^T = 0, \quad (\text{A.8})$$

1611 and requirement  $\det(\mathbb{P}) = 0$  leads to two transcendental equations

$$\frac{m_1 \xi_2}{m_2 \xi_1} = \frac{\tan \xi_2 L/2}{\tan \xi_1 L/2} \quad (\text{A.9a})$$

$$\frac{m_1 \xi_2}{m_2 \xi_1} = \frac{\tan \xi_1 L/2}{\tan \xi_2 L/2} \quad (\text{A.9b})$$

1612 which gives two energies varying with  $\mathbf{k}$ , designated as  $E_+$  and  $E_-$ , respectively. To be  
1613 clearer,

$$E_+ = m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \frac{\xi_1^2 g^+(\xi_1) - \xi_2^2 g^+(\xi_2)}{g^+(\xi_1) - g^+(\xi_2)}, \quad g^+(\xi) = \frac{\tan(\xi L/2)}{\xi}, \quad (\text{A.10a})$$

$$E_- = m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \frac{\xi_1^2 g^-(\xi_1) - \xi_2^2 g^-(\xi_2)}{g^-(\xi_1) - g^-(\xi_2)}, \quad g^-(\xi) = \frac{1}{\tan(\xi L/2)\xi}. \quad (\text{A.10b})$$

1614 In common sense, it is time taking  $E_\pm$  into expressions of  $\xi$ s, together with the coefficients  
1615 equations again and solve them. However, that not only is tricky but lacks of physical  
1616 insight, and we shall change our perspective.



1617 Notice that under parity operation  $\mathbf{z} \leftrightarrow -\mathbf{z}$ ,  $\tau_x \leftrightarrow -\tau_x$  and  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s}) \leftrightarrow \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$ , then both  
 1618  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$  and  $\mathbf{H}_{1d}$  has parity symmetry and the general solution should contain two factors  
 1619 below considering the boundary condition:

$$\begin{cases} f_+(z) = \frac{\cos(\xi_1 z)}{\cos(\xi_1 L/2)} - \frac{\cos(\xi_2 z)}{\cos(\xi_2 L/2)} \\ f_-(z) = \frac{\sin(\xi_1 z)}{\sin(\xi_1 L/2)} - \frac{\sin(\xi_2 z)}{\sin(\xi_2 L/2)} \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.11})$$

1620 where the subscripts refer to even or odd parity. Now we can assume that for energy  $E$ ,  
 1621  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$  has solution

$$\phi = \tilde{c} f_+ + \tilde{d} f_- = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{c}_1 f_+ + \tilde{d}_1 f_- \\ \tilde{c}_2 f_+ + \tilde{d}_2 f_- \end{pmatrix}, \quad (\text{A.12})$$

1622 and the two-line eigenequation  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})\phi = E\phi$  gives, for the first line

$$\tilde{d}_2 = i t_\perp \eta_1 \tilde{c}_1 / s \lambda_\perp, \quad (\text{A.13a})$$

$$\tilde{c}_2 = -i t_\perp \eta_2 \tilde{d}_1 / s \lambda_\perp, \quad (\text{A.13b})$$

1623 which leads to

$$\phi_1^+ = C_1^+ \begin{pmatrix} -i s \lambda_\perp f_+ \\ t_\perp \eta_1 f_- \end{pmatrix}, \quad E = E_+, \quad (\text{A.14a})$$

$$\phi_1^- = C_1^- \begin{pmatrix} i s \lambda_\perp f_- \\ t_\perp \eta_2 f_+ \end{pmatrix}, \quad E = E_-; \quad (\text{A.14b})$$

1624 and for the second line,

$$\tilde{d}_1 = -i t_\perp \eta_1 \tilde{c}_2 / s \lambda_\perp, \quad (\text{A.15a})$$

$$\tilde{c}_1 = i t_\perp \eta_2 \tilde{d}_2 / s \lambda_\perp, \quad (\text{A.15b})$$

1625 which leads to

$$\phi_2^+ = C_2^+ \begin{pmatrix} t_\perp \eta_1 f_- \\ i s \lambda_\perp f_+ \end{pmatrix}, \quad E = -E_+, \quad (\text{A.16a})$$

$$\phi_2^- = C_2^- \begin{pmatrix} t_\perp \eta_2 f_+ \\ -i s \lambda_\perp f_- \end{pmatrix}, \quad E = -E_-, \quad (\text{A.16b})$$

1626 by defining two coefficients

$$\eta_1 = \frac{\xi_1^2 - \xi_2^2}{\xi_1 \cot(\xi_1 L/2) - \xi_2 \cot(\xi_2 L/2)}, \quad (\text{A.17a})$$

$$\eta_2 = \frac{\xi_1^2 - \xi_2^2}{\xi_1 \tan(\xi_1 L/2) - \xi_2 \tan(\xi_2 L/2)}, \quad (\text{A.17b})$$

1627 with  $\mathbf{C}$  is the norm, and super and lower indices represent  $E_\pm$  and line index, respectively.  
 1628 Clearly,  $\mathbf{C}_1^\iota = \mathbf{C}_2^\iota$  is identified, and  $\phi_1^\iota = -i \tau_y \phi_2^\iota$  as they are chiral partners ( $\iota = \pm$ ).

1629 Solution above seems to give four solutions, mathematical restriction, however, tells  
 1630 that equations from different lines for the same set of coefficients must stand simulta-  
 1631 neously, i.e., (A.14a)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (A.16b) and (A.14b)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (A.16a), which gives us two relations as  
 1632

$$\mathbf{1} = \left| \frac{i t_\perp \eta_1}{s \lambda_\perp} \cdot \frac{i t_\perp \eta_2}{s \lambda_\perp} \right| \Rightarrow |\eta_1 \eta_2| = \frac{\lambda_\perp^2}{t_\perp^2}, \quad (\text{A.18a})$$

$$E_+ = -E_-, \quad (\text{A.18b})$$

1633 and the latter is also a physical result from Dirac equation. Then, we only have two  
 1634 independent solutions for one  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$  sub-block, say Eq. (A.14a) and Eq. (A.16a). Formal  
 1635 combination of equations for the simultaneous-standing equations from different lines again  
 1636 leads to

$$E^2 - (m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \xi^2)^2 - \lambda_\perp^2 \xi^2 = 0. \quad (\text{A.19})$$

1637 Then we see that the guessing solution not only satisfies the boundary condition, but also  
 1638 satisfies all  $E - \xi$  equations, thus it is indeed our solution.

1639 Notice that, by Eq. (A.4),  $\xi_\alpha$  are both complex or not complex for a given energy,  
 1640 where complex means both real and imaginary parts of  $\xi$  are non-vanishing, determined  
 1641 by the sign of  $\mathbf{R}$ . This information, combined with property of trigonometric/hyperbolic  
 1642 function leads to the conclusion that quadratic form  $f_+^* f_-$  and  $\eta$  (at certain  $(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}, E)$ ) are  
 1643 always real. Essentially,  $f_\pm$  are either real or purely imaginary.

1644 Now, we restore  $\mathbf{s}$  explicitly and extract

$$\varphi(\mathbf{s}) = \phi_1^{s,+}, \quad \chi(\mathbf{s}) = \phi_2^{s,+} \quad (\text{A.20})$$

1645 as two solutions for  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$  for basis construction. Then by defining

$$\begin{cases} m = E_+ = m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \frac{\xi_1^2 g(\xi_1) - \xi_2^2 g(\xi_2)}{g(\xi_1) - g(\xi_2)}, \\ g(\xi) = \frac{\tan(\xi L/2)}{\xi}, \\ \eta = \frac{\xi_1^2 - \xi_2^2}{\xi_1 \cot(\xi_1 L/2) - \xi_2 \cot(\xi_2 L/2)}, \\ C = C_1^+ = C_2^+, \end{cases} \quad (\text{A.21})$$

1646 one obtains four projecting basis in certain sequence as

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_1 &= \begin{pmatrix} \varphi(+) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = C \begin{pmatrix} -i\lambda_\perp f_+ \\ t_\perp \eta f_- \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \Phi_2 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \chi(-) \end{pmatrix} = C \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ t_\perp \eta f_- \\ -i\lambda_\perp f_+ \end{pmatrix}, \\ \Phi_3 &= \begin{pmatrix} \chi(+) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = C \begin{pmatrix} t_\perp \eta f_- \\ i\lambda_\perp f_+ \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \Phi_4 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \varphi(-) \end{pmatrix} = C \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ i\lambda_\perp f_+ \\ t_\perp \eta f_- \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.22})$$

1647 with energy  $(\mathbf{m}, -\mathbf{m}, -\mathbf{m}, \mathbf{m})$ , respectively. Notice that  $\Phi_{3,4}$  are chiral partners of  $\Phi_{1,2}$  by  
 1648  $-i\tau_y$ , respectively. To obtain  $\mathbf{m}$ , a set of closed equations need to be solved

$$\mathbf{m} = m_0(\mathbf{k}) - t_\perp \frac{\xi_1^2 g^+(\xi_1) - \xi_2^2 g^+(\xi_2)}{g^+(\xi_1) - g^+(\xi_2)}, \quad (\text{A.23a})$$

$$\xi_\alpha = \sqrt{-\frac{F}{D} + (-1)^{\alpha-1} \frac{\sqrt{R}}{D}}, \quad \alpha = 1, 2, \quad (\text{A.23b})$$

1649 where

$$\begin{cases} g^+(\xi) = \tan(\xi L/2)/\xi \\ D = 2t_\perp^2 \\ F = -2m_0(k)t_\perp + \lambda_\perp^2 \\ R = F^2 - 2D(m_0^2(k) - m^2) \end{cases} . \quad (\text{A.24})$$

1650 Basically, there are three variables  $(m, \xi_1, \xi_2)$  with three equations, then they could be  
1651 determined exactly.

### 1652 A.1 Symmetry analysis of solutions

1653 Firstly, as we have stated, the chiral symmetry  $\tau_y$  is respected in Eq. (A.1) since  $\{\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s}), \tau_y\} = \mathbf{0}$ ,  
1654 and this symmetry is reflected in our solutions by  $\varphi(\mathbf{s}) = -i\tau_y\chi(\mathbf{s})$  with opposite energies.

1655 Meanwhile, we have relied on the help from the 1D parity symmetry which is a reflection  
1656 along  $\mathbf{z}$  direction, or simply, the  $\mathbf{z}$ -parity  $\mathcal{P}_z$ , which acts on the basis as

$$\Phi(\mathbf{z}) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{P}_z} \tau_z \Phi(-\mathbf{z}), \quad (\text{A.25})$$

1657 with  $\tau_z$  the unitary matrix related to inner degrees of freedom transformation. Now  
1658 since  $f_\pm(\mathbf{z}) = \pm f_\pm(-\mathbf{z})$ , we identify that  $\Phi_{1,4}$  ( $\Phi_{2,3}$ ) are even (odd) under  $\mathbf{z}$ -parity, and  
1659 correspondingly, under the representation of  $\Phi$ , the unitary matrix related to  $\mathbf{z}$ -parity is  
1660 written as  $\tau_z \sigma_z$ .

1661 There exists in fact a hidden symmetry in the model, namely, the mirror symmetry  
1662 about the  $\mathbf{x}$ - $\mathbf{y}$  plane. Effectively, it will also bring  $\mathbf{z}$  to  $-\mathbf{z}$  as an inversion, but with an  
1663 additional operation that rotates spin angular momentum by  $\pi$  phase, i.e., such a  $\mathbf{z}$ -Mirror  
1664 symmetry  $\mathcal{M}_z$  is a combination of  $\mathcal{P}_z$  and a  $\mathcal{C}_{2z}$  rotation, which then acts on the basis as

$$\Phi(\mathbf{z}) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{M}_z} \sigma_z \tau_z \Phi(-\mathbf{z}), \quad (\text{A.26})$$

1665 and classifies  $\Phi_{1,2}$  ( $\Phi_{3,4}$ ) into  $\mathbf{z}$ -mirror even (odd) states. Accordingly, under  $\Phi$  represen-  
1666 tation this operator has form  $\tau_z \sigma_0$ . Then combined with the spin index  $\mathbf{s} = \pm$  appeared  
1667 in  $\varphi(\mathbf{s}), \chi(\mathbf{s})$ , we can further assign  $\Phi_i$  to be  $\Phi_{\chi, \mathbf{s}}$  with  $\chi, \mathbf{s}$  labelling mirror and spin- $\mathbf{z}$   
1668 index as

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_{++} &= \Phi_1, & \Phi_{+-} &= \Phi_2, \\ \Phi_{-+} &= \Phi_3, & \Phi_{--} &= \Phi_4. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.27})$$

1669 The single  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{s})$  does not share time reversal symmetry, since under  $\mathcal{T} = i\sigma_y \mathcal{K}$ ,  
1670  $\mathbf{h}(+) \leftrightarrow \mathbf{h}(-)$ , i.e.,  $H_{1d}$  owns this symmetry. Also given by the fact that time rever-  
1671 sal keeps energy unconverted, one finds  $\Phi_4 = e^{i\theta} \mathcal{T} \Phi_1$ ,  $\Phi_2 = e^{i\theta} \mathcal{T} \Phi_3$ , where  $\theta = \mathbf{0}$  or  $\pi$   
1672 depending on  $\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{E}$ . The essential point to get avoid of subtle  $f_\pm^*$  is to notice that they are  
1673 either both real or imaginary, as stated above, while  $\eta$  is always real. Also notice that we  
1674 did not write  $\mathbf{k}$  explicitly since  $H_{1d}(\mathbf{k}) = H_{1d}(-\mathbf{k})$ .

1675 The combination of time reversal and chiral symmetries gives rise to a particle hole  
1676 symmetry, which, when implanted over basis, reads  $\varphi(\mathbf{s}) = e^{i\theta} \varphi^*(\bar{\mathbf{s}}) = e^{i\theta} [-i\tau_y \chi(\bar{\mathbf{s}})]^*$ ,  
1677 with  $\bar{\mathbf{s}} = -\mathbf{s}$  identified.

1678 Similar analysis applies for the lattice model, and the projected  $\mathcal{P}_z, \mathcal{M}_z$  share the same  
1679 matrix form above.

## 1680 A.2 Equivalent block Hamiltonian

1681 The projection procedure works under the given basis representation  $H_{TI}(\mathbf{k})$ , which is  
1682 formally  $H = \langle \Phi | H_{TI}(\mathbf{k}) | \Phi \rangle$ , with

$$(H)_{ij}^{nn'} = \int d\mathbf{z} (\Phi_i^n(\mathbf{z}))^\dagger H_{TI}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}) \Phi_j^{n'}(\mathbf{z}), \quad (\text{A.28})$$

1683 where the integral is done from  $-L/2$  to  $L/2$ . Clearly, projection on  $H_{1d}$  would give  
1684  $\text{diag}(\mathbf{m}, -\mathbf{m}, -\mathbf{m}, \mathbf{m})$ , then we only need to deal with  $H_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k}) = \lambda_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) \tau_x = \lambda_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k}_x \sigma_x + \mathbf{k}_y \sigma_y) \tau_x$   
1685 term. Since  $H_{\parallel}(\mathbf{k})$  is purely off-diagonal, it is easy to conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Phi_i^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_i^{n'} \rangle &= 0, \quad i = 1, 2, 3, 4 \\ \langle \Phi_1^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_3^{n'} \rangle &= 0 = \langle \Phi_2^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_4^{n'} \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

1686 Then only four terms need consideration by hermicity, among which

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Phi_1^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_4^{n'} \rangle &= \lambda_{\parallel} k_{-} |C^n C^{n'}| \int d\mathbf{z} i \lambda_{\perp} t_{\perp} [\eta^n (f_{+}^n)^* f_{-}^{n'} + \eta^{n'} (f_{-}^n)^* f_{+}^{n'}] = 0, \\ \langle \Phi_2^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_3^{n'} \rangle &= \lambda_{\parallel} k_{-} |C^n C^{n'}| \int d\mathbf{z} i \lambda_{\perp} t_{\perp} [\eta^n (f_{-}^n)^* f_{+}^{n'} + \eta^{n'} (f_{+}^n)^* f_{-}^{n'}] = 0, \end{aligned}$$

1687 as  $f_{-} f_{+}$  is odd to  $\mathbf{z}$ . Here  $\mathbf{k}_{\pm} = \mathbf{k}_x \pm i \mathbf{k}_y$  is defined. Then, the only remaining terms are

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Phi_1^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_2^{n'} \rangle &= \int d\mathbf{z} \lambda_{\parallel} k_{-} \varphi^\dagger(\lambda_{\perp}) \tau_x \chi(-\lambda_{\perp}) = \lambda_{\parallel} k_{-} \delta_{nn'}, \\ \langle \Phi_3^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_4^{n'} \rangle &= \int d\mathbf{z} \lambda_{\parallel} k_{-} \varphi^\dagger(\lambda_{\perp}) \tau_x \chi(-\lambda_{\perp}) = \lambda_{\parallel} k_{-} \delta_{nn'}, \end{aligned}$$

1688 where the normalization condition is used. And finally we arrive at the block Hamiltonian

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_n \lambda_{\parallel} \tau_0 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}) + m_n(\mathbf{k}) \tau_z \sigma_z, \quad (\text{A.29})$$

1689 as Eq. (1a). Here, notice that the spin degree of freedom is fully preserved as  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ , while the  
1690 newly-defined  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  owns different meaning from the original one.

1691 To make the transformation more formal, we define the transformation matrix

$$U^c(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}) = (\{\{\Phi\}_i\}^n)(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}), \quad (\text{A.30})$$

1692 where the double brackets mean that we arrange  $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$  index inside each  $\mathbf{n} = 1, 2, \dots$ ,  
1693 and by written more straightforwardly,

$$U^c = (\Phi^1, \Phi^2, \dots), \quad \Phi^n = (\Phi_1^n, \Phi_2^n, \Phi_3^n, \Phi_4^n). \quad (\text{A.31})$$

1694 This transformation then brings the Hamiltonian of the boundary constrained topological  
1695 insulator film  $H_{TI}(\mathbf{k}, -i\partial_z)$  into the direct sum form of Dirac fermions by

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = \int d\mathbf{z} (U^c)^\dagger(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}) H_{TI}(\mathbf{k}, -i\partial_z) U^c(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}). \quad (\text{A.32})$$

### 1696 A.3 Analytic expression for mass term

1697 The proof has been posted separately [33], and here is a repetition. Analytic expression  
 1698 for effective mass  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$  is obtained in the  $L \rightarrow \infty$  case as a thick limit, however, notice  
 1699 that finite-size correction to  $\mathbf{m}(\mathbf{k})$  decays exponentially with thickness [38], our proof here  
 1700 is suitable even for a thin film. Closed  $E - \xi$  equations are

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(k)t_\perp - \lambda_\perp^2}{t_\perp^2} \\ \xi_1^2 \xi_2^2 = \frac{m_0(k)^2 - E^2}{t_\perp^2} \\ E = m_0(k) - t_\perp \frac{\xi_1^2 g^+(\xi_1) - \xi_2^2 g^+(\xi_2)}{g^+(\xi_1) - g^+(\xi_2)} \end{array} \right. , \quad (\text{A.33})$$

1701 where  $g^+(\xi) = \tan(\xi L/2)/\xi$ . We shall assume  $\lambda_\perp > 0$ ,  $t_\perp > 0$  in the following discussion,  
 1702 without losing generality, and  $m_0(k)$  controls the expression form.

1703 The classification on  $\tan(\xi L/2)$  leads to

$$\lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \tan(\xi L/2) = \begin{cases} i, & \text{Im}(\xi) > 0 \\ \text{N.A.}, & \text{Im}(\xi) = 0 \\ -i, & \text{Im}(\xi) < 0 \end{cases} . \quad (\text{A.34})$$

1704 And three basic cases are separated as

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Im}(\xi_1) > 0 > \text{Im}(\xi_2) \\ \text{Im}(\xi_{1,2}) > 0 \\ \text{Im}(\xi_1) = 0, \text{Im}(\xi_2) > 0 \end{array} \right. , \quad (\text{A.35})$$

1705 while other cases could be obtained similarly.

1706 **Case I.** ( $\text{Im}(\xi_1) > 0 > \text{Im}(\xi_2)$ )

1707 Now  $\tan(\xi_1 L/2) = i = -\tan(\xi_2 L/2)$  ( $L \rightarrow +\infty$  ignored), and

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(k)t_\perp - \lambda_\perp^2}{t_\perp^2} \\ \xi_1^2 \xi_2^2 = \frac{m_0(k)^2 - E^2}{t_\perp^2} \\ E = m_0(k) - t_\perp \xi_1 \xi_2 \end{array} \right. , \quad (\text{A.36})$$

1708 where the second and third equations lead to

$$m_0(k)^2 - E^2 = (m_0(k) - E)^2, \quad (\text{A.37})$$

1709 which offers two possible solutions  $E = 0$  or  $E = m_0(k)$ .

1710 **I. ( $E = 0$ )** This leads to

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \xi_1 \xi_2 = \frac{m_0(k)}{t_\perp} \\ \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(k)t_\perp - \lambda_\perp^2}{t_\perp^2} \end{array} \right. . \quad (\text{A.38})$$

1711 Requiring  $\text{Im}(\xi_1) > 0 > \text{Im}(\xi_2)$  then gives

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 + \xi_2 = \begin{cases} 2u\sqrt{4\gamma-1}, & \gamma > 1/4 \\ 2ui\sqrt{1-4\gamma}, & \gamma < 1/4 \end{cases} \\ \xi_1 - \xi_2 = 2ui \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.39})$$

1712

$$\begin{cases} \gamma = m_0(k)t_{\perp}/\lambda_{\perp}^2 \\ u = \lambda_{\perp}/2t_{\perp} \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.40})$$

1713 which offers:

1714 •  $\gamma > 1/4$ :

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = u(\sqrt{4\gamma-1} + i) \\ \xi_2 = u(\sqrt{4\gamma-1} - i) \end{cases}; \quad (\text{A.41})$$

1715 •  $\gamma < 1/4$ :

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = iu(\sqrt{1-4\gamma} + 1) \\ \xi_2 = iu(\sqrt{1-4\gamma} - 1) \end{cases}. \quad (\text{A.42})$$

1716 The latter condition stands only when  $\gamma > 0$  as for  $\text{Im}(\xi_2) < 0$ .

1717 **II. ( $E = m_0(k)$ )** This leads to

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1\xi_2 = 0 \\ \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(k)t_{\perp} - \lambda_{\perp}^2}{t_{\perp}^2} \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.43})$$

1718 and one of  $\xi_{\alpha} = 0$  is unavoidable, which fails the precondition and is abandoned, i.e.,  
1719  $E = m_0(k)$  is not a solution in the case.

1720 **Case II. ( $\text{Im}(\xi_{1,2}) > 0$ )**

1721 Now  $\tan(\xi_1 L/2) = i = \tan(\xi_2 L/2)$  ( $L \rightarrow +\infty$  ignored), and

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(k)t_{\perp} - \lambda_{\perp}^2}{t_{\perp}^2} \\ \xi_1^2\xi_2^2 = \frac{m_0(k)^2 - E^2}{t_{\perp}^2} \\ E = m_0(k) + t_{\perp}\xi_1\xi_2 \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.44})$$

1722 then the second and third equations above leads to

$$m_0(k)^2 - E^2 = (m_0(k) - E)^2, \quad (\text{A.45})$$

1723 which gives us two possible solutions as  $E = 0$  or  $E = m_0(k)$ .

1724 **I. ( $E = 0$ )** This condition leads to

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1\xi_2 = -\frac{m_0(k)}{t_{\perp}} \\ \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(k)t_{\perp} - \lambda_{\perp}^2}{t_{\perp}^2} \end{cases}. \quad (\text{A.46})$$

1725 Requirement  $\text{Im}(\xi_{1,2}) > 0$  then gives

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 + \xi_2 = 2ui \\ \xi_1 - \xi_2 = \begin{cases} 2u\sqrt{4\gamma-1}, & \gamma > 1/4 \\ 2ui\sqrt{1-4\gamma}, & \gamma < 1/4 \end{cases} \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.47})$$

1726 which offers:

1727 •  $\gamma > 1/4$ :

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = u(\sqrt{4\gamma-1} + i) \\ \xi_2 = u(-\sqrt{4\gamma-1} + i) \end{cases} ; \quad (\text{A.48})$$

1728 •  $\gamma < 1/4$ :

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = iu(\sqrt{1-4\gamma} + 1) \\ \xi_2 = iu(-\sqrt{1-4\gamma} + 1) \end{cases} . \quad (\text{A.49})$$

1729 The latter condition stands only when  $\gamma > 0$  as for  $\text{Im}(\xi_2) > 0$ .

1730 **II.** ( $E = m_0(\mathbf{k})$ ) This leads to

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 \xi_2 = 0 \\ \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(\mathbf{k})t_\perp - \lambda_\perp^2}{t_\perp^2} \end{cases} , \quad (\text{A.50})$$

1731 and again one of  $\xi_\alpha = 0$  is unavoidable, and one concludes  $E = m_0(\mathbf{k})$  is not a solution in  
1732 the case.

1733 **Case III.** ( $\text{Im}(\xi_1) = 0$ ,  $\text{Im}(\xi_2) > 0$ )

1734 By guessing  $E = m_0(\mathbf{k})$ , we have

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 \xi_2 = 0 \\ \xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 = \frac{2m_0(\mathbf{k})t_\perp - \lambda_\perp^2}{t_\perp^2} \end{cases} , \quad (\text{A.51})$$

1735 which gives

$$\begin{cases} (\xi_1 + \xi_2)^2 = 4u^2(2\gamma - 1) \\ (\xi_1 - \xi_2)^2 = 4u^2(2\gamma - 1) \end{cases} , \quad (\text{A.52})$$

1736 and choosing

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = 0 \\ \xi_2 = 2ui\sqrt{1-2\gamma} \end{cases} , \quad (\text{A.53})$$

1737 fulfills the requirement. Notice that  $\gamma < 1/2$  is assumed, which should not bother the  
1738 self-consistent solution. Meanwhile, since  $\xi_1 = 0$  leads to degenerate eigenvalue  $\pm\xi_1$ , then  
1739 one should generally assume another solution as

$$(A + Bz)e^{i\xi_1 z} \phi \Big|_{\xi_1=0, E=m_0(\mathbf{k})}$$

1740 which, however, only gives result that  $B = 0$  while  $A$  is arbitrary, which passes no additional  
1741 information.

1742 Retrospecting the definition  $\gamma = m_0(\mathbf{k})t_\perp/\lambda_\perp^2$ , the discussion above naturally leads to  
1743 the conclusion that the lowest eigenenergy of  $H_{1d}$  reads

$$E = \begin{cases} 0, & m_0(\mathbf{k}) > 0 \\ m_0(\mathbf{k}), & m_0(\mathbf{k}) < 0 \end{cases} , \quad (\text{A.54})$$

1744 or by re-defining lowest  $E(\mathbf{k})$  as  $m_1(\mathbf{k})$ , we write

$$m_1(\mathbf{k}) = \Theta(-m_0(\mathbf{k}))m_0(\mathbf{k}),$$

1745 as result mention in Eq. (11)

#### 1746 A.4 Finite-size correction to mass term

1747 We could in fact conserve the lowest order correction to see the finite size gap when  $L$  is  
 1748 not that large. For  $\xi_1$  and  $\xi_2$ , one could approximately get lowest order correction for  
 1749  $\tan(\xi L/2)$  by treating  $\beta^{\pm L/2}$  as small quantity (depend on sign of  $\text{Im}(\xi)$ )

$$\tan(\xi L/2) \approx \begin{cases} i(1-2\beta^L), & \text{Im}(\xi) > 0 \\ -i(1-2\beta^{-L}), & \text{Im}(\xi) < 0 \end{cases}. \quad (\text{A.55})$$

1750 Also notice that from the original  $E - \xi$  equation

$$E^2 - (m_0(k) - t_\perp \xi^2)^2 - \lambda_\perp^2 \xi^2 = 0,$$

1751 which could be further split into (when  $E = 0$  as zeroth-order)

$$t_\perp \xi^2 \pm i\lambda_\perp \xi - m_0(k) = 0, \quad (\text{A.56})$$

1752 one solves

$$\xi = \frac{s_1 i \lambda_\perp + s_2 \sqrt{4m_0(k)t_\perp - \lambda_\perp^2}}{2t_\perp} = u(is_1 + s_2 \sqrt{4\gamma - 1}), \quad (\text{A.57})$$

1753 where  $s_1, s_2 = \pm$  without restriction. Notice that in real calculation, one needs to specify  
 1754 which branch  $\xi_{1,2}$  lie in, but such choice will not affect the final result as long as chosen  
 1755  $\xi_{1,2}$  satisfy zeroth-order solution. Now again we have two cases below:

1756 •  $\gamma > 1/4$ , we choose

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = \xi_2^* \\ \text{Im}(\xi_1) > 0 > \text{Im}(\xi_2) \\ \text{Re}(\xi_1) = \text{Re}(\xi_2) > 0 \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.58})$$

1757 as main branch condition, then

$$\begin{cases} \tan(\xi_1 L/2) \approx i(1-2\beta_1^L) \\ \tan(\xi_2 L/2) \approx -i(1-2\beta_2^{-L}) \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.59})$$

1758 and

$$E(k) \approx (m_0(k) - t_\perp \xi_1 \xi_2) + 2t_\perp \xi_1 \xi_2 \frac{\xi_1 - \xi_2}{\xi_1 + \xi_2} (e^{i\xi_1 L} - e^{-i\xi_2 L}).$$

1759 Notice that first term in bracket is zeroth order as  $E \approx 0$ . Now, it is time to utilize four  
 1760 solutions in Eq. (A.57). By main branch condition above, accordingly we choose

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = u(\sqrt{4\gamma - 1} + i) \\ \xi_2 = u(\sqrt{4\gamma - 1} - i) \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.60})$$

1761 considering that  $\gamma > 1/4$  in this zone. Afterwards, one obtains

$$E(k) \approx -\frac{4m_0(k)}{\sqrt{4\gamma - 1}} \sin(u\sqrt{4\gamma - 1}L) e^{-uL}. \quad (\text{A.61})$$

1762 Low energy surface state mass shows both exponentially decay and oscillating behavior.

1763 •  $0 < \gamma < 1/4$ , we choose

$$\begin{cases} \text{Im}(\xi_1) > 0 \\ \text{Im}(\xi_2) > 0 \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.62})$$



1764 as main branch condition, then

$$\begin{cases} \tan(\xi_1 L/2) \approx i(1 - 2\beta_1^L) \\ \tan(\xi_2 L/2) \approx i(1 - 2\beta_2^L) \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.63})$$

1765

$$E(k) \approx (m_0(k) + t_\perp \xi_1 \xi_2) - 2t_\perp \xi_1 \xi_2 \frac{\xi_1 + \xi_2}{\xi_1 - \xi_2} (e^{i\xi_1 L} - e^{i\xi_2 L}),$$

1766 where first term in bracket is again zeroth order energy approaching zero. Again, utilizing  
1767 four solutions in Eq. (A.57) with main branch condition above, we choose

$$\begin{cases} \xi_1 = iu(1 + \sqrt{1 - 4\gamma}) \\ \xi_2 = iu(1 - \sqrt{1 - 4\gamma}) \end{cases}, \quad (\text{A.64})$$

1768 considering that  $0 < \gamma < 1/4$  in this zone. Again, one obtains

$$E(k) \approx -\frac{4m_0(k)}{\sqrt{1 - 4\gamma}} \sinh(u\sqrt{1 - 4\gamma}L) e^{-uL}. \quad (\text{A.65})$$

1769 Since  $\sin(ix) = i \sinh(x)$ , and by  $\gamma = m_0(k)t_\perp/\lambda_\perp^2$ , we may set  $\gamma(k_c) = 0$  and obtain a  
1770 unified expression for lowest order mass correction

$$E(k < k_c) = -\frac{4m_0(k)}{\sqrt{4\gamma - 1}} \sin(u\sqrt{4\gamma - 1}L) e^{-uL}. \quad (\text{A.66})$$

1771 However, as a comment, in numerical calculation,  $E$  in zone  $0 < \gamma < 1/4$  is suppressed into  
1772 zero in a much slower manner, which is caused by exponential cancellation between **sinh**  
1773 and **exp**. Nevertheless, since  $\sqrt{1 - 4\gamma} < 1$  in the region, we conclude that the exponential  
1774 increasing is always slower than the decaying, which finally pushes the state to zero energy  
1775 for  $L \rightarrow +\infty$ .

## 1776 B Derivation of Eq. (1b)

1777 To obtain an effective model, we start from solving  $\mathcal{H}_{1d}$  and notice that  $[\mathcal{H}_{1d}(\mathbf{k}), \sigma_z] = 0$ ,  
1778 from which we could let

$$\mathcal{H}_{1d}(\mathbf{k})\zeta_s \otimes |\phi^s(\mathbf{k})\rangle = \zeta_s \otimes \mathcal{H}_{1d}^s(\mathbf{k})|\phi^s(\mathbf{k})\rangle, \quad (\text{B.1})$$

1779 where  $\mathcal{H}_{1d}^s(\mathbf{k})$  is split Hamiltonian that only acts on one subspace, and by definition

$$\sigma_z \zeta_s = s \zeta_s, \quad s = \pm. \quad (\text{B.2})$$

1780 Under basis of  $\{\Psi_{l_z, k}\}_{l_z}$ ,  $\mathcal{H}_{1d}^s(\mathbf{k})$  is in its matrix form denoted as  $H_{1d}^s(\mathbf{k})$ , with solution  
1781 defined from its eigenvalue equation

$$H_{1d}^s(\mathbf{k})\phi^s(\mathbf{k}) = E^s(\mathbf{k})\phi^s(\mathbf{k}), \quad \phi^s(\mathbf{k}) = \oplus_{l_z} \phi_{l_z}^s(\mathbf{k}). \quad (\text{B.3})$$

1782 To make discussion pithy, we shall omit  $s, \mathbf{k}$  and let  $M \equiv M_0(\mathbf{k})$  below in the section.

1783 Eq. (B.3) can be written in the recurrence form as

$$(t_\perp \tau_z + i \frac{\lambda_\perp}{2} s \tau_x) \phi_{l_z-1} + M \tau_z \phi_{l_z} + (t_\perp \tau_z - i \frac{\lambda_\perp}{2} s \tau_x) \phi_{l_z+1} = E \phi_{l_z}, \quad (\text{B.4})$$

1784 by observing which could we set trial function as  $\phi_{l_z} = e^{i\xi l_z} \phi = \beta^{l_z} \phi$  where  $\beta = e^{i\xi}$ .  
 1785 Then accordingly the equation is reduced to

$$[(t_{\perp} \tau_z + i \frac{\lambda_{\perp}}{2} s \tau_x) \beta^{-1} + (M \tau_z - E) + (t_{\perp} \tau_z - i \frac{\lambda_{\perp}}{2} s \tau_x) \beta] \phi = 0, \quad (\text{B.5})$$

1786 which firstly leads to

$$E^2 = (M + 2t_{\perp} \cos \xi)^2 + \lambda_{\perp}^2 \sin^2 \xi, \quad (\text{B.6})$$

1787 requiring non-trivial  $\phi$ . From Eq. (B.6) one solves

$$\begin{cases} \cos \xi_{\alpha}^p = \frac{-Mt_{\perp} + (-1)^{\alpha-1} \sqrt{M^2 t_{\perp}^2 - (t_{\perp}^2 - \lambda_{\perp}^2/4)(M^2 + \lambda_{\perp}^2 - E^2)}}{2(t_{\perp}^2 - \lambda_{\perp}^2/4)}, \\ \sin \xi_{\alpha}^p = p \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \xi_{\alpha}^p}, \quad p = \pm, \alpha = 1, 2, \end{cases} \quad (\text{B.7})$$

1788 which tells that

$$\beta_{\alpha}^p = e^{i\xi_{\alpha}^p} = \cos \xi_{\alpha} + ip \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \xi_{\alpha}}. \quad (\text{B.8})$$

1789 Here one thing to notice is that the sign change of  $\sin \xi_{\alpha}^p$  is caused by sign change of  $\xi$ ,  
 1790 rather than a phase shift like  $\xi \rightarrow \xi + \pi$ , since the latter will lead to the sign change of  
 1791  $\cos \xi$ , too, and that is not our solution.

1792 To make maximum utilization of the symmetry, we consider canonical boundary con-  
 1793 dition in which the centre of 1-d chain sits at  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{0}$ , then by denoting  $\mathbf{l} = \mathbf{L}_z + \mathbf{1}$ , we would  
 1794 have

$$\phi^s(\pm \frac{\mathbf{l}}{2}) = 0, \quad (\text{B.9})$$

1795 and it is essential to notice that sites  $\mathbf{l}_z = \pm \frac{\mathbf{L}_z + 1}{2}$  are two fictitious points where the  
 1796 constraints take place, and true lattice stops at  $\mathbf{l}_z = \pm \frac{\mathbf{L}_z - 1}{2}$  as we only have  $\mathbf{L}_z$  sites.  
 1797 What is more, for compensation of unifying expression regardless of oddity of  $\mathbf{L}_z$ ,  $\mathbf{l}_z$   
 1798 would be forced to choose different ways to be taken out as follows

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{l}_z = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots, \pm \frac{\mathbf{L}_z + 1}{2}, \text{ for } \mathbf{L}_z \text{ odd,} \\ \mathbf{l}_z = \pm \frac{1}{2}, \pm \frac{3}{2}, \dots, \pm \frac{\mathbf{L}_z + 1}{2}, \text{ for } \mathbf{L}_z \text{ even,} \end{cases} \quad (\text{B.10})$$

1799 which conforms mirror symmetry to  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{0}$ . Afterwards, enlightened by the idea of sym-  
 1800 metric trial functions, we also build several functions from  $\beta_{\alpha}^p$  considering the symmetric  
 1801 case stated above. Denote

$$\begin{cases} E(\beta, \mathbf{l}_z) = \frac{\beta^{\mathbf{l}_z} + \beta^{-\mathbf{l}_z}}{\beta^{(\mathbf{L}_z+1)/2} + \beta^{-(\mathbf{L}_z+1)/2}} = \frac{\cos(\xi \mathbf{l}_z)}{\cos(\xi \mathbf{l}/2)} \\ O(\beta, \mathbf{l}_z) = \frac{\beta^{\mathbf{l}_z} - \beta^{-\mathbf{l}_z}}{\beta^{(\mathbf{L}_z+1)/2} - \beta^{-(\mathbf{L}_z+1)/2}} = \frac{\sin(\xi \mathbf{l}_z)}{\sin(\xi \mathbf{l}/2)} \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.11})$$

1802 where ‘ $E$ ’ and ‘ $O$ ’, namely even and odd, represent the parity of two functions about  $\mathbf{z}$ ,  
 1803 and one should not identify  $E$  here as the energy function. From which we establish two  
 1804 sets of factors respecting boundary condition with even or odd parity

$$\begin{cases} f_{+}(\mathbf{l}_z) = \sum_{\alpha} (-1)^{\alpha-1} E(\beta_{\alpha}^p, \mathbf{l}_z) \\ f_{-}(\mathbf{l}_z) = \sum_{\alpha} (-1)^{\alpha-1} O(\beta_{\alpha}^p, \mathbf{l}_z) \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.12})$$

1805 where the summation is over  $\alpha$  but without  $\mathbf{p}$  since it only changes sign of  $\xi$  and thus does  
 1806 not influence the value of  $\mathbf{E}$  or  $\mathbf{O}$ . Before proceeding, let us find some special properties  
 1807 about those functions or factors. Let

$$\begin{cases} a = \beta + \frac{1}{\beta} = 2 \cos \xi \\ b = \beta - \frac{1}{\beta} = 2i \sin \xi \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.13})$$

1808 who weight as the *lattice differential operators* that lead to relation

$$f_+(l_z \pm 1) = \sum_{\alpha} (-1)^{\alpha-1} \frac{\alpha_{\alpha} E(\beta_{\alpha}, l_z) \pm i b_{\alpha} \tan(\xi_{\alpha} l/2) O(\beta_{\alpha}, l_z)}{2} \equiv g_{\pm}, \quad (\text{B.14a})$$

$$f_-(l_z \pm 1) = \sum_{\alpha} (-1)^{\alpha-1} \frac{\alpha_{\alpha} O(\beta_{\alpha}, l_z) \mp i b_{\alpha} \cot(\xi_{\alpha} l/2) E(\beta_{\alpha}, l_z)}{2} \equiv h_{\pm}. \quad (\text{B.14b})$$

1809 One could again see that the iteration relation is also independent of  $\mathbf{p}$  within our expecta-  
 1810 tion.

1811 Now we are able to come back and solve the chain problem. Let

$$\phi_{l_z} = c f_+(l_z) + d f_-(l_z), \quad (\text{B.15})$$

1812 to be guessed general solution confined by boundary condition. Bring this trial solution  
 1813 into Eq. (B.4) and requiring vanishing coefficients of  $\mathbf{E}(\beta_{\alpha}, l_z)$  and  $\mathbf{O}(\beta_{\alpha}, l_z)$ , one obtains,  
 1814 after re-organization,

$$\begin{cases} (M - E + t_{\perp} a_{\alpha}) c_1 - \frac{\lambda_{\perp}}{2} s d_2 b_{\alpha} \cot(\xi_{\alpha} l/2) = 0 \\ -\frac{\lambda_{\perp}}{2} s c_1 b_{\alpha} \tan(\xi_{\alpha} l/2) + (M + E + t_{\perp} a_{\alpha}) d_2 = 0 \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.16a})$$

$$\begin{cases} (M - E + t_{\perp} a_{\alpha}) d_1 + \frac{\lambda_{\perp}}{2} s c_2 b_{\alpha} \tan(\xi_{\alpha} l/2) = 0 \\ \frac{\lambda_{\perp}}{2} s d_1 b_{\alpha} \cot(\xi_{\alpha} l/2) + (M + E + t_{\perp} a_{\alpha}) c_2 = 0 \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.16b})$$

1815 for different  $\alpha$ . Requiring simultaneous standing with respect to  $\alpha$  leads to four solutions  
 1816 in pairs

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} d_2 = \frac{it_{\perp} \eta_1}{s \lambda_{\perp}} c_1, E = E_+ \\ c_1 = \frac{it_{\perp} \eta_2}{s \lambda_{\perp}} d_2, E = -E_- \end{array} \right\}, \left\{ \begin{array}{l} c_2 = -\frac{it_{\perp} \eta_2}{s \lambda_{\perp}} d_1, E = E_- \\ d_1 = -\frac{it_{\perp} \eta_1}{s \lambda_{\perp}} c_2, E = -E_+ \end{array} \right\}, \quad (\text{B.17})$$

1817 where the formal expression for energies are

$$E_{\pm} = M + 2t_{\perp} \frac{\cos \xi_1 g^{\pm}(\xi_1) - \cos \xi_2 g^{\pm}(\xi_2)}{g^{\pm}(\xi_1) - g^{\pm}(\xi_2)}, \quad (\text{B.18})$$

1818 with two defined functions

$$g^{\pm}(\xi) = \frac{\tan^{\pm 1}(\xi(L_z + 1)/2)}{\sin \xi} \quad (\text{B.19})$$

1819 and two dimensionless factors

$$\begin{cases} \eta_1 = \frac{-2(\cos \xi_1 - \cos \xi_2)}{\sin \xi_1 \cot(\xi_1 l/2) - \sin \xi_2 \cot(\xi_2 l/2)}, \\ \eta_2 = \frac{-2(\cos \xi_1 - \cos \xi_2)}{\sin \xi_1 \tan(\xi_1 l/2) - \sin \xi_2 \tan(\xi_2 l/2)}, \end{cases} \quad (\text{B.20})$$

1820 have been introduced. From the above discussion we seemingly have four solutions, math-  
 1821 ematical restriction, however, tells that equations in Eq. (B.16) in the same brace must  
 1822 stand simultaneously, which then gives us two relations as

$$\begin{cases} 1 = \left| \frac{it_{\perp}\eta_1}{s\lambda_{\perp}} \cdot \frac{it_{\perp}\eta_2}{s\lambda_{\perp}} \right| \implies |\eta_1\eta_2| = \frac{\lambda_{\perp}^2}{t_{\perp}^2}, \\ m \equiv E_+ = -E_-, \end{cases} \quad (\text{B.21})$$

1823 and the latter one is also a physical result from Dirac equation. This reduces our four so-  
 1824 lutions to two independent ones for each  $\mathbf{s}$ . The above discussion is equivalent to requiring  
 1825 simultaneous standing of equations in left brace of Eq. (B.16)

$$E^2 = (M + 2t_{\perp} \cos \xi_{\alpha})^2 + \lambda_{\perp}^2 \sin^2 \xi_{\alpha},$$

1826 which is independent of  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  and matches the result of Eq. (B.6).

1827 Similar arguments can be made here as in the continuum model. Counting on complex-  
 1828 ity of  $\xi_{1,2}$  restricted by Eq. (B.7) and the property of trigonometric/hyperbolic function  
 1829 leads to the conclusion that quadratic form  $f_+^*f_-$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  (at certain  $(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{E})$ ) are always  
 1830 real. Essentially,  $f_{\pm}$  are either real or purely imaginary.

1831 In short, what we need solving to get all energy states  $\mathbf{m}$  are the simultaneous equations  
 1832 below

$$m = M + 2t_{\perp} \frac{\cos \xi_1 g(\xi_1) - \cos \xi_2 g(\xi_2)}{g(\xi_1) - g(\xi_2)}, \quad (\text{B.22a})$$

$$\cos \xi_{\alpha} = \frac{-Mt_{\perp} + (-1)^{\alpha-1} \sqrt{M^2 t_{\perp}^2 - (t_{\perp}^2 - \lambda_{\perp}^2/4)(M^2 + \lambda_{\perp}^2 - m^2)}}{2(t_{\perp}^2 - \lambda_{\perp}^2/4)}, \quad (\text{B.22b})$$

1833 where

$$\begin{cases} M = M_0(\mathbf{k}) = m_0 - 4t_{\parallel} \left( \sin^2 \frac{k_x a}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{k_y b}{2} \right) - 2t_{\perp}, \\ g(\xi) = \frac{\tan(\xi(L_z + 1))/2}{\sin \xi}, \end{cases} \quad (\text{B.23})$$

1834 and sign of  $\xi$  is fixed by  $\mathbf{p} = +$  so that

$$\sin \xi_{\alpha} = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \xi_{\alpha}}, \quad \alpha = 1, 2. \quad (\text{B.24})$$

1835 Basically, there are three variables  $\xi_1, \xi_2$  and  $\mathbf{m}$ , together with three equations above, then  
 1836 it is in a sense some *exact system of equations* but a non-linear transcendental version.  
 1837 From this set of equations, one may expect  $L_z$  solutions  $\mathbf{m}_n(\mathbf{k}), n = 1, 2, \dots, L_z$  including  
 1838 one surface state and  $L_z - 1$  purely trivial bulk states, if within suitable choice of param-  
 1839 eters. And the other set of  $L_z$  solutions are just chiral partners with  $-\mathbf{m}_n(\mathbf{k})$ . Notice that  
 1840 these  $2L_z$  solutions compose eigenvalues for one  $H_{1d}^s$ , then by counting  $\mathbf{s} = \pm$  there are in  
 1841 fact  $4L_z$  solutions in total, which is expected from the matrix form of  $H_{1d}$ .

1842 Here it comes to construct basis for projection, we firstly ignore lower index for  $\mathbf{m}$   
 1843 since our wavefunction solution form is universal whatever  $\mathbf{n}$  takes. Then by counting  $\mathbf{s}$ ,  
 1844 we totally have four independent solutions for each  $\mathbf{m}$  as follows

$$\begin{cases} \varphi(\mathbf{s}) = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 f_+ \\ d_2 f_- \end{pmatrix} = C \begin{pmatrix} -is\lambda_{\perp} f_+ \\ t_{\perp} \eta f_- \end{pmatrix}, E = m \\ \chi(\mathbf{s}) = \begin{pmatrix} d_1 f_- \\ c_2 f_+ \end{pmatrix} = C \begin{pmatrix} t_{\perp} \eta f_- \\ is\lambda_{\perp} f_+ \end{pmatrix}, E = -m \end{cases}, \quad (\text{B.25})$$

1845 where we have ignored lower index of  $\eta_1$ , and the norm  $\mathcal{C}$  is the same for  $\varphi$  and  $\chi$  states.  
 1846 Then restoring  $\mathbf{n}$ -indices we have  $4\mathbf{L}_z$  basis in certain sequence as

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_1^n &= \zeta_+ \otimes \varphi(+) = \begin{pmatrix} \varphi^n(+) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \Phi_2^n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \chi^n(-) \end{pmatrix}, \\ \Phi_3^n &= \begin{pmatrix} \chi^n(+) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \Phi_4^n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \varphi^n(-) \end{pmatrix},\end{aligned}\tag{B.26}$$

1847 with energies  $(m_n(\mathbf{k}), -m_n(\mathbf{k}), -m_n(\mathbf{k}), m_n(\mathbf{k}))$ , respectively. The  $(\mathbf{k}, l_z)$  dependence of  
 1848 these basis states are inherited from functions  $f_{\pm}^n(\mathbf{k}, l_z)$  and factor  $\eta^n(\mathbf{k})$ .

1849 The basis here shares the same symmetry analysis as within the continuum model,  
 1850 while here the parity and mirror symmetries can be written down explicitly in the off-  
 1851 diagonal matrix form, with  $\sigma_0 \tau_z$  and  $-i\sigma_z \tau_z$  as the [anti-diagonal/off-diagonal](#) elements, re-  
 1852 spectively. And especially, by combining the mirror and spin- $z$  index, we assign  $\Phi_i^n = \Phi_{\chi, s}^n$   
 1853 with

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_{++}^n &= \Phi_1^n, \quad \Phi_{+-}^n = \Phi_2^n, \\ \Phi_{-+}^n &= \Phi_3^n, \quad \Phi_{--}^n = \Phi_4^n.\end{aligned}\tag{B.27}$$

1854 Now we turn to the projection, which is formally

$$\langle \Phi | H_{\text{Film}} | \Phi \rangle = \langle \Phi | H_{1d} | \Phi \rangle + \langle \Phi | H_{\parallel} | \Phi \rangle,\tag{B.28}$$

1855 where the first part, by the definition of eigenvalue equation, is just  $\Theta_n \text{diag}(m_n, -m_n, -m_n, m_n) = \Theta_n m_n(\mathbf{k}) \tau_z$   
 1856 while in the second part, since  $H_{\parallel} = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x \tau_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y \tau_x)$  is purely off diag-  
 1857 onal, it is easy to conclude that

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \Phi_i^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_i^{n'} \rangle &= 0, \quad i = 1, 2, 3, 4, \\ \langle \Phi_1^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_3^{n'} \rangle &= 0 = \langle \Phi_2^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_4^{n'} \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

1858 Then only four terms need consideration by hermicity, among which

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \Phi_1^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_4^{n'} \rangle &= \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a) - i \sin(k_y b)) \sum_{l_z} |C|^2 i \lambda_{\perp} t_{\perp} [\eta^n (f_+^n)^* f_-^{n'} + \eta^{n'} (f_-^{n'})^* f_+^n] = 0, \\ \langle \Phi_2^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_3^{n'} \rangle &= \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a) - i \sin(k_y b)) \sum_{l_z} |C|^2 i \lambda_{\perp} t_{\perp} [\eta^n (f_-^n)^* f_+^{n'} + \eta^{n'} (f_+^{n'})^* f_-^n] = 0,\end{aligned}$$

1859 as  $f_- f_+$  is odd to  $z$ . Then, the only remaining terms are

$$\langle \Phi_1^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_2^{n'} \rangle = \lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a) - i \sin(k_y b)) \delta_{nn'} = \langle \Phi_3^n | H_{\parallel} | \Phi_4^{n'} \rangle,$$

1860 where normalization condition is used. Finally we arrive at the equivalent Hamiltonian

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{L_z} [\lambda_{\parallel}(\sin(k_x a) \sigma_x + \sin(k_y b) \sigma_y) + m_n(\mathbf{k}) \tau_z \sigma_z] = \bigoplus_{n, \chi} h_{n, \chi}(\mathbf{k}),\tag{B.29}$$

1861 where unspecified degrees of freedom are all identity matrix. And hereto we have suc-  
 1862 cessfully arrived at Eq. (1b) in the main text. Also notice that  $H$  is exactly equivalent  
 1863 to original  $H_{\text{Film}}$ , since by counting all  $\mathbf{n}$ , the projection we did is just a unitary basis  
 1864 transformation, where the unitary matrix is composed of solutions of  $H_{1d}$ .

1865 The projection here is also a unitary transformation, which shares a simpler form than  
 1866 that in the continuum model. Since now the original Hamiltonian reads

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{Film}}(\mathbf{k}) = \sum_{l_z, l'_z} \Psi_{l_z}^{\dagger} H_{\text{Film}}(\mathbf{k}, l_z, l'_z) \Psi_{l'_z},\tag{B.30}$$

1867 then by defining  $\Psi = \bigoplus_{l_z} \Psi_{l_z}$ , we identify the unitary transformation as

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{Film}}(\mathbf{k}) = (\Psi^\dagger U^l) [(U^l)^\dagger H_{\text{Film}}(\mathbf{k}) U^l] ((U^l)^\dagger \Psi), \quad (\text{B.31})$$

1868 where

$$U^l = (\Phi^1, \Phi^2, \dots, \Phi^{L_z}), \quad \Phi^n = (\Phi_1^n, \Phi_2^n, \Phi_3^n, \Phi_4^n), \quad (\text{B.32})$$

1869 and we recognize  $\Phi_i^n = \bigoplus_{l_z} \Phi_i^n(l_z)$  here so that  $U^l$  is a  $4L_z \times 4L_z$  unitary matrix. And here  
1870 again  $U^l$  is trivial in  $\mathbf{k}$ -space. The core transformation on matrix form of Hamiltonian  
1871 gives rise to

$$H(\mathbf{k}) = (U^l(\mathbf{k}))^\dagger H_{\text{Film}}(\mathbf{k}) U^l(\mathbf{k}), \quad (\text{B.33})$$

1872 while the inverse transformation  $(U^l)^\dagger \Psi$  assigns composed Fermionic operators to the new  
1873 basis. Essentially, the transformation to each  $h_{n,\chi}$  is done by

$$h_{n,\chi} = (U_{n,\chi}^l)^\dagger H_{\text{Film}} U_{n,\chi}^l, \quad (\text{B.34})$$

1874 where

$$U_{n,\chi}^l = \Phi_\chi^n = (\Phi_{\chi,s=+}^n, \Phi_{\chi,s=-}^n), \quad (\text{B.35})$$

1875 is a  $2L_z \times 2$  matrix.

## 1876 References

- 1877 [1] A. Altland and M. R. Zirnbauer, *Nonstandard symmetry classes in meso-*  
1878 *scopic normal-superconducting hybrid structures*, Phys. Rev. B **55**, 1142 (1997),  
1879 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.55.1142](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.55.1142).
- 1880 [2] S. Ryu, A. P. Schnyder, A. Furusaki and A. W. W. Ludwig, *Topological insulators*  
1881 *and superconductors: tenfold way and dimensional hierarchy*, New J. Phys. **12**(6),  
1882 065010 (2010), doi:[10.1088/1367-2630/12/6/065010](https://doi.org/10.1088/1367-2630/12/6/065010).
- 1883 [3] C.-K. Chiu, J. C. Y. Teo, A. P. Schnyder and S. Ryu, *Classification of topo-*  
1884 *logical quantum matter with symmetries*, Rev. Mod. Phys. **88**, 035005 (2016),  
1885 doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.88.035005](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.88.035005).
- 1886 [4] B. Fu, J.-Y. Zou, Z.-A. Hu, H.-W. Wang and S.-Q. Shen, *Quantum anomalous*  
1887 *semimetals*, npj Quantum Mater. **7**(1), 94 (2022), doi:[10.1038/s41535-022-00503-0](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41535-022-00503-0).
- 1888 [5] S. D. Sarma, M. Freedman and C. Nayak, *Majorana zero modes and topological quan-*  
1889 *tum computation*, npj Quantum Inf. **1**(1), 15001 (2015), doi:[10.1038/npjqi.2015.1](https://doi.org/10.1038/npjqi.2015.1).
- 1890 [6] A. Soumyanarayanan, N. Reyren, A. Fert and C. Panagopoulos, *Emergent phenom-*  
1891 *ena induced by spin-orbit coupling at surfaces and interfaces*, Nature **539**(7630), 509  
1892 (2016), doi:[10.1038/nature19820](https://doi.org/10.1038/nature19820).
- 1893 [7] J. Junquera, Y. Nahas, S. Prokhorenko, L. Bellaiche, J. Íñiguez, D. G. Schlom,  
1894 L.-Q. Chen, S. Salahuddin, D. A. Muller, L. W. Martin and R. Ramesh, *Topo-*  
1895 *logical phases in polar oxide nanostructures*, Rev. Mod. Phys. **95**, 025001 (2023),  
1896 doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.95.025001](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.95.025001).
- 1897 [8] L. D. Landau and E. M. Lifshitz, *Statistical Physics: Volume 5*, vol. 5, Elsevier  
1898 (2013).
- 1899 [9] P. W. Anderson, *Basic notions of condensed matter physics*, CRC Press (2018).

- 1900 [10] D. J. Thouless, M. Kohmoto, M. P. Nightingale and M. den Nijs, *Quantized hall*  
1901 *conductance in a two-dimensional periodic potential*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **49**, 405 (1982),  
1902 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.49.405](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.49.405).
- 1903 [11] X.-G. Wen, *Topological orders and edge excitations in fractional quantum hall states*,  
1904 Adv. Phys. **44**(5), 405 (1995), doi:[10.1080/00018739500101566](https://doi.org/10.1080/00018739500101566), [https://doi.org/10.](https://doi.org/10.1080/00018739500101566)  
1905 [1080/00018739500101566](https://doi.org/10.1080/00018739500101566).
- 1906 [12] C. L. Kane and E. J. Mele,  *$Z_2$  topological order and the quantum spin hall effect*,  
1907 Phys. Rev. Lett. **95**, 146802 (2005), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.95.146802](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.95.146802).
- 1908 [13] M. Z. Hasan and C. L. Kane, *Colloquium: Topological insulators*, Rev. Mod. Phys.  
1909 **82**, 3045 (2010), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.82.3045](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.82.3045).
- 1910 [14] X.-L. Qi and S.-C. Zhang, *Topological insulators and superconductors*, Rev. Mod.  
1911 Phys. **83**, 1057 (2011), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.83.1057](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.83.1057).
- 1912 [15] A. Bansil, H. Lin and T. Das, *Colloquium: Topological band theory*, Rev. Mod.  
1913 Phys. **88**, 021004 (2016), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.88.021004](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.88.021004).
- 1914 [16] Y. Tokura, K. Yasuda and A. Tsukazaki, *Magnetic topological insulators*, Nat. Rev.  
1915 Phys. **1**(2), 126 (2019), doi:[10.1038/s42254-018-0011-5](https://doi.org/10.1038/s42254-018-0011-5).
- 1916 [17] L. Fu, C. L. Kane and E. J. Mele, *Topological insulators in three dimensions*, Phys.  
1917 Rev. Lett. **98**, 106803 (2007), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.98.106803](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.98.106803).
- 1918 [18] J. E. Moore and L. Balents, *Topological invariants of time-reversal-invariant band*  
1919 *structures*, Phys. Rev. B **75**, 121306 (2007), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.75.121306](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.75.121306).
- 1920 [19] R. Roy, *Topological phases and the quantum spin hall effect in three dimensions*,  
1921 Phys. Rev. B **79**, 195322 (2009), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.79.195322](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.79.195322).
- 1922 [20] D. Hsieh, D. Qian, L. Wray, Y. Xia, Y. S. Hor, R. J. Cava and M. Z. Hasan, *A*  
1923 *topological dirac insulator in a quantum spin hall phase*, Nature **452**(7190), 970  
1924 (2008), doi:[10.1038/nature06843](https://doi.org/10.1038/nature06843).
- 1925 [21] Y. Xia, D. Qian, D. Hsieh, L. Wray, A. Pal, H. Lin, A. Bansil, D. Grauer,  
1926 Y. S. Hor, R. J. Cava and M. Z. Hasan, *Observation of a large-gap topological-*  
1927 *insulator class with a single dirac cone on the surface*, Nat. Phys. **5**(6), 398 (2009),  
1928 doi:[10.1038/nphys1274](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys1274).
- 1929 [22] D. Hsieh, Y. Xia, D. Qian, L. Wray, F. Meier, J. H. Dil, J. Osterwalder, L. Patthey,  
1930 A. V. Fedorov, H. Lin, A. Bansil, D. Grauer *et al.*, *Observation of time-reversal-*  
1931 *protected single-dirac-cone topological-insulator states in  $\text{Bi}_2\text{Te}_3$  and  $\text{Sb}_2\text{Te}_3$* , Phys.  
1932 Rev. Lett. **103**, 146401 (2009), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.103.146401](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.103.146401).
- 1933 [23] Y. L. Chen, J. G. Analytis, J.-H. Chu, Z. K. Liu, S.-K. Mo, X. L. Qi, H. J. Zhang,  
1934 D. H. Lu, X. Dai, Z. Fang, S. C. Zhang, I. R. Fisher *et al.*, *Experimental realiza-*  
1935 *tion of a three-dimensional topological insulator,  $\text{Bi}_2\text{Te}_3$* , Science **325**(5937), 178  
1936 (2009), doi:[10.1126/science.1173034](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1173034), [https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1173034)  
1937 [science.1173034](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1173034).
- 1938 [24] B. I. Halperin, *Quantized hall conductance, current-carrying edge states, and the*  
1939 *existence of extended states in a two-dimensional disordered potential*, Phys. Rev. B  
1940 **25**, 2185 (1982), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.25.2185](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.25.2185).

- 1941 [25] Y. Hatsugai, *Chern number and edge states in the integer quantum hall effect*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **71**, 3697 (1993), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.71.3697](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.71.3697).  
1942
- 1943 [26] Y. Hatsugai, *Edge states in the integer quantum hall effect and the riemann surface of the bloch function*, Phys. Rev. B **48**, 11851 (1993), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.48.11851](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.48.11851).  
1944
- 1945 [27] S.-Q. Shen, *Starting from the Dirac Equation*, pp. 17–32, Springer Singapore, Singapore, ISBN 978-981-10-4606-3, doi:[10.1007/978-981-10-4606-3\\_2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-10-4606-3_2) (2017).  
1946
- 1947 [28] L. Šmejkal, Y. Mokrousov, B. Yan and A. H. MacDonald, *Topological antiferromagnetic spintronics*, Nat. Phys. **14**(3), 242 (2018), doi:[10.1038/s41567-018-0064-5](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41567-018-0064-5).  
1948
- 1949 [29] H. Nielsen and M. Ninomiya, *Absence of neutrinos on a lattice: (i). proof by homotopy theory*, Nucl. Phys. B **185**(1), 20 (1981), doi:[https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213\(81\)90361-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213(81)90361-8).  
1950  
1951
- 1952 [30] H. Nielsen and M. Ninomiya, *Absence of neutrinos on a lattice: (ii). intuitive topological proof*, Nucl. Phys. B **193**(1), 173 (1981), doi:[https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213\(81\)90524-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213(81)90524-1).  
1953  
1954
- 1955 [31] J.-Y. Zou, R. Chen, B. Fu, H.-W. Wang, Z.-A. Hu and S.-Q. Shen, *Half-quantized hall effect at the parity-invariant fermi surface*, Phys. Rev. B **107**, 125153 (2023),  
1956  
1957  
doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.107.125153](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.107.125153).
- 1958 [32] K.-Z. Bai, B. Fu, Z. Zhang and S.-Q. Shen, *Metallic quantized anomalous hall effect without chiral edge states*, Phys. Rev. B **108**, L241407 (2023),  
1959  
1960  
doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.108.L241407](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.108.L241407).
- 1961 [33] B. Fu, K.-Z. Bai and S.-Q. Shen, *Half-quantum mirror hall effect*, Nature Communications **15**(1), 6939 (2024), doi:[10.1038/s41467-024-51215-x](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-024-51215-x).  
1962
- 1963 [34] K. G. Wilson, *Confinement of quarks*, Phys. Rev. D **10**, 2445 (1974),  
1964  
doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.10.2445](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.10.2445).
- 1965 [35] S. D. Drell, M. Weinstein and S. Yankielowicz, *Strong-coupling field theories. ii. fermions and gauge fields on a lattice*, Phys. Rev. D **14**, 1627 (1976),  
1966  
1967  
doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.14.1627](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.14.1627).
- 1968 [36] B. Zhou, H.-Z. Lu, R.-L. Chu, S.-Q. Shen and Q. Niu, *Finite size effects on helical edge states in a quantum spin-hall system*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **101**, 246807 (2008),  
1969  
1970  
doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.101.246807](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.101.246807).
- 1971 [37] H.-Z. Lu, W.-Y. Shan, W. Yao, Q. Niu and S.-Q. Shen, *Massive dirac fermions and spin physics in an ultrathin film of topological insulator*, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 115407 (2010), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.81.115407](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.81.115407).  
1972  
1973
- 1974 [38] W.-Y. Shan, H.-Z. Lu and S.-Q. Shen, *Effective continuous model for surface states and thin films of three-dimensional topological insulators*, New J. Phys. **12**(4), 043048 (2010), doi:[10.1088/1367-2630/12/4/043048](https://doi.org/10.1088/1367-2630/12/4/043048).  
1975  
1976
- 1977 [39] Y. Zhang, K. He, C.-Z. Chang, C.-L. Song, L.-L. Wang, X. Chen, J.-F. Jia, Z. Fang, X. Dai, W.-Y. Shan, S.-Q. Shen, Q. Niu *et al.*, *Crossover of the three-dimensional topological insulator Bi<sub>2</sub>Se<sub>3</sub> to the two-dimensional limit*, Nat. Phys. **6**(8), 584 (2010),  
1978  
1979  
1980  
doi:[10.1038/nphys1689](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys1689).



- 1981 [40] C.-X. Liu, H. Zhang, B. Yan, X.-L. Qi, T. Frauenheim, X. Dai, Z. Fang and S.-C.  
1982 Zhang, *Oscillatory crossover from two-dimensional to three-dimensional topological*  
1983 *insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 041307 (2010), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.81.041307](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.81.041307).
- 1984 [41] S. K. Chong, L. Liu, K. Watanabe, T. Taniguchi, T. D. Sparks, F. Liu and V. V.  
1985 Deshpande, *Emergent helical edge states in a hybridized three-dimensional topological*  
1986 *insulator*, Nat. Commun. **13**(1), 6386 (2022), doi:[10.1038/s41467-022-33643-9](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-022-33643-9).
- 1987 [42] A. C. Lygo, B. Guo, A. Rashidi, V. Huang, P. Cuadros-Romero and S. Stemmer,  
1988 *Two-dimensional topological insulator state in cadmium arsenide thin films*, Phys.  
1989 Rev. Lett. **130**, 046201 (2023), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.130.046201](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.130.046201).
- 1990 [43] D. N. Sheng, Z. Y. Weng, L. Sheng and F. D. M. Haldane, *Quantum spin-hall effect*  
1991 *and topologically invariant chern numbers*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **97**, 036808 (2006),  
1992 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.97.036808](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.97.036808).
- 1993 [44] B. A. Bernevig, T. L. Hughes and S.-C. Zhang, *Quantum spin hall effect and*  
1994 *topological phase transition in HgTe quantum wells*, Science **314**(5806), 1757  
1995 (2006), doi:[10.1126/science.1133734](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1133734), [https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1133734)  
1996 [science.1133734](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1133734).
- 1997 [45] M. König, S. Wiedmann, C. Brüne, A. Roth, H. Buhmann, L. W. Molenkamp, X.-  
1998 L. Qi and S.-C. Zhang, *Quantum spin hall insulator state in HgTe quantum wells*,  
1999 Science **318**(5851), 766 (2007), doi:[10.1126/science.1148047](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1148047), [https://www.science.](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1148047)  
2000 [org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1148047](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1148047).
- 2001 [46] Y. L. Chen, J.-H. Chu, J. G. Analytis, Z. K. Liu, K. Igarashi, H.-H. Kuo, X. L.  
2002 Qi, S. K. Mo, R. G. Moore, D. H. Lu, M. Hashimoto, T. Sasagawa *et al.*, *Massive*  
2003 *dirac fermion on the surface of a magnetically doped topological insulator*, Science  
2004 **329**(5992), 659 (2010), doi:[10.1126/science.1189924](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1189924), [https://www.science.org/doi/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1189924)  
2005 [pdf/10.1126/science.1189924](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1189924).
- 2006 [47] F. D. M. Haldane, *Model for a quantum hall effect without landau levels: Condensed-*  
2007 *matter realization of the "parity anomaly"*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **61**, 2015 (1988),  
2008 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.61.2015](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.61.2015).
- 2009 [48] R. Yu, W. Zhang, H.-J. Zhang, S.-C. Zhang, X. Dai and Z. Fang, *Quantized*  
2010 *anomalous hall effect in magnetic topological insulators*, Science **329**(5987), 61  
2011 (2010), doi:[10.1126/science.1187485](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1187485), [https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1187485)  
2012 [science.1187485](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1187485).
- 2013 [49] C.-Z. Chang, J. Zhang, X. Feng, J. Shen, Z. Zhang, M. Guo, K. Li, Y. Ou, P. Wei,  
2014 L.-L. Wang, Z.-Q. Ji, Y. Feng *et al.*, *Experimental observation of the quantum*  
2015 *anomalous hall effect in a magnetic topological insulator*, Science **340**(6129), 167  
2016 (2013), doi:[10.1126/science.1234414](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1234414), [https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1234414)  
2017 [science.1234414](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1234414).
- 2018 [50] X.-L. Qi, T. L. Hughes and S.-C. Zhang, *Topological field theory*  
2019 *of time-reversal invariant insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **78**, 195424 (2008),  
2020 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.78.195424](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.78.195424).
- 2021 [51] M. Mogi, M. Kawamura, R. Yoshimi, A. Tsukazaki, Y. Kozuka, N. Shirakawa, K. . S.  
2022 Takahashi, M. Kawasaki and Y. Tokura, *A magnetic heterostructure of topological*  
2023 *insulators as a candidate for an axion insulator*, Nat. Mater. **16**(5), 516 (2017),  
2024 doi:[10.1038/nmat4855](https://doi.org/10.1038/nmat4855).

- 2025 [52] M. Mogi, Y. Okamura, M. Kawamura, R. Yoshimi, K. Yasuda, A. Tsukazaki, K. S.  
2026 Takahashi, T. Morimoto, N. Nagaosa, M. Kawasaki, Y. Takahashi and Y. Tokura,  
2027 *Experimental signature of the parity anomaly in a semi-magnetic topological insula-*  
2028 *tor*, Nat. Phys. **18**(4), 390 (2022), doi:[10.1038/s41567-021-01490-y](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41567-021-01490-y).
- 2029 [53] J.-Y. Zou, B. Fu, H.-W. Wang, Z.-A. Hu and S.-Q. Shen, *Half-quantized hall effect*  
2030 *and power law decay of edge-current distribution*, Phys. Rev. B **105**, L201106 (2022),  
2031 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.105.L201106](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.105.L201106).
- 2032 [54] H. Zhang, C.-X. Liu, X.-L. Qi, X. Dai, Z. Fang and S.-C. Zhang, *Topological insu-*  
2033 *lators in Bi<sub>2</sub>Se<sub>3</sub>, Bi<sub>2</sub>Te<sub>3</sub> and Sb<sub>2</sub>Te<sub>3</sub> with a single dirac cone on the surface*, Nat.  
2034 Phys. **5**(6), 438 (2009), doi:[10.1038/nphys1270](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys1270).
- 2035 [55] M. E. Peskin, *An introduction to quantum field theory*, CRC press (2018).
- 2036 [56] H.-W. Wang, B. Fu and S.-Q. Shen, *Helical symmetry breaking and quan-*  
2037 *tum anomaly in massive dirac fermions*, Phys. Rev. B **104**, L241111 (2021),  
2038 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.104.L241111](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.104.L241111).
- 2039 [57] H.-W. Wang, B. Fu, J.-Y. Zou, Z.-A. Hu and S.-Q. Shen, *Fractional electromagnetic*  
2040 *response in a three-dimensional chiral anomalous semimetal*, Phys. Rev. B **106**,  
2041 045111 (2022), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.106.045111](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.106.045111).
- 2042 [58] K. O. Friedrichs, *The identity of weak and strong extensions of differential operators*,  
2043 Trans. Am. Math. Soc. **55**(1), 132 (1944).
- 2044 [59] Z. Wang, H. Weng, Q. Wu, X. Dai and Z. Fang, *Three-dimensional dirac*  
2045 *semimetal and quantum transport in Cd<sub>3</sub>As<sub>2</sub>*, Phys. Rev. B **88**, 125427 (2013),  
2046 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.88.125427](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.88.125427).
- 2047 [60] S.-B. Zhang, H.-Z. Lu and S.-Q. Shen, *Edge states and integer quantum hall effect in*  
2048 *topological insulator thin films*, Sci. Rep. **5**(1), 13277 (2015), doi:[10.1038/srep13277](https://doi.org/10.1038/srep13277).
- 2049 [61] W. P. Su, J. R. Schrieffer and A. J. Heeger, *Solitons in polyacetylene*, Phys. Rev.  
2050 Lett. **42**, 1698 (1979), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.42.1698](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.42.1698).
- 2051 [62] W. P. Su, J. R. Schrieffer and A. J. Heeger, *Soliton excitations in polyacetylene*,  
2052 Phys. Rev. B **22**, 2099 (1980), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.22.2099](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.22.2099).
- 2053 [63] G. E. Volovik, *Topological Lifshitz transitions*, Low Temp. Phys. **43**(1), 47  
2054 (2017), doi:[10.1063/1.4974185](https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4974185), [https://pubs.aip.org/aip/ltp/article-pdf/43/1/47/15722194/47\\_1\\_online.pdf](https://pubs.aip.org/aip/ltp/article-pdf/43/1/47/15722194/47_1_online.pdf).
- 2056 [64] L. Fu and C. L. Kane, *Topological insulators with inversion symmetry*, Phys. Rev.  
2057 B **76**, 045302 (2007), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.76.045302](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.76.045302).
- 2058 [65] G. D. Mahan, *Nonzero Temperatures*, pp. 109–185, Springer US, Boston, MA, ISBN  
2059 978-1-4757-5714-9, doi:[10.1007/978-1-4757-5714-9\\_3](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4757-5714-9_3) (2000).
- 2060 [66] S. L. Adler, *Axial-vector vertex in spinor electrodynamics*, Phys. Rev. **177**, 2426  
2061 (1969), doi:[10.1103/PhysRev.177.2426](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRev.177.2426).
- 2062 [67] E. Witten, *An su(2) anomaly*, Phys. Lett. B **117**(5), 324 (1982),  
2063 doi:[https://doi.org/10.1016/0370-2693\(82\)90728-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/0370-2693(82)90728-6).

- 2064 [68] A. N. Redlich, *Parity violation and gauge noninvariance of the effective*  
2065 *gauge field action in three dimensions*, Phys. Rev. D **29**, 2366 (1984),  
2066 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.29.2366](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.29.2366).
- 2067 [69] R. Jackiw, *Fractional charge and zero modes for planar systems in a magnetic field*,  
2068 Phys. Rev. D **29**, 2375 (1984), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.29.2375](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.29.2375).
- 2069 [70] G. W. Semenoff, *Condensed-matter simulation of a three-dimensional anomaly*,  
2070 Phys. Rev. Lett. **53**, 2449 (1984), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.53.2449](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.53.2449).
- 2071 [71] E. Fradkin, E. Dagotto and D. Boyanovsky, *Physical realization of the par-*  
2072 *ity anomaly in condensed matter physics*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **57**, 2967 (1986),  
2073 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.57.2967](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.57.2967).
- 2074 [72] M. Nakahara, *Geometry, topology and physics*, CRC press (2018).
- 2075 [73] A. Bohm, A. Mostafazadeh, H. Koizumi, Q. Niu and J. Zwanziger, *Mathematical*  
2076 *Structure of the Geometric Phase I: The Abelian Phase*, pp. 107–127, Springer  
2077 Berlin Heidelberg, Berlin, Heidelberg, ISBN 978-3-662-10333-3, doi:[10.1007/978-3-](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-10333-3_6)  
2078 [662-10333-3\\_6](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-10333-3_6) (2003).
- 2079 [74] T. T. Wu and C. N. Yang, *Concept of nonintegrable phase factors and global formu-*  
2080 *lation of gauge fields*, Phys. Rev. D **12**, 3845 (1975), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.12.3845](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.12.3845).
- 2081 [75] T. T. Wu and C. N. Yang, *Dirac's monopole without strings: Classical lagrangian*  
2082 *theory*, Phys. Rev. D **14**, 437 (1976), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.14.437](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.14.437).
- 2083 [76] M. V. Berry, *Quantal phase factors accompanying adiabatic changes*, Proc. R. Soc.  
2084 Lond. A **392**(1802), 45 (1984).
- 2085 [77] F. D. M. Haldane, *Berry curvature on the fermi surface: Anomalous hall ef-*  
2086 *fect as a topological fermi-liquid property*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **93**, 206602 (2004),  
2087 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.93.206602](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.93.206602).
- 2088 [78] X. Wang, D. Vanderbilt, J. R. Yates and I. Souza, *Fermi-surface calcula-*  
2089 *tion of the anomalous hall conductivity*, Phys. Rev. B **76**, 195109 (2007),  
2090 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.76.195109](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.76.195109).
- 2091 [79] D. Xiao, M.-C. Chang and Q. Niu, *Berry phase effects on electronic properties*, Rev.  
2092 Mod. Phys. **82**, 1959 (2010), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1959](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1959).
- 2093 [80] Y. Chen, D. L. Bergman and A. A. Burkov, *Weyl fermions and the anoma-*  
2094 *lous hall effect in metallic ferromagnets*, Phys. Rev. B **88**, 125110 (2013),  
2095 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.88.125110](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.88.125110).
- 2096 [81] C.-X. Liu, X.-L. Qi, X. Dai, Z. Fang and S.-C. Zhang, *Quantum anomalous*  
2097 *hall effect in  $\text{Hg}_{1-y}\text{Mn}_y\text{Te}$  quantum wells*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **101**, 146802 (2008),  
2098 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.101.146802](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.101.146802).
- 2099 [82] M. Creutz and I. Horváth, *Surface states and chiral symmetry on the lattice*, Phys.  
2100 Rev. D **50**, 2297 (1994), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.50.2297](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.50.2297).
- 2101 [83] J. Wang, B. Lian, H. Zhang, Y. Xu and S.-C. Zhang, *Quantum anoma-*  
2102 *lous hall effect with higher plateaus*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **111**, 136801 (2013),  
2103 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.111.136801](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.111.136801).

- 2104 [84] A. Sekine and K. Nomura, *Axion electrodynamics in topological materials*, J. Appl.  
2105 Phys. **129**(14), 141101 (2021), doi:[10.1063/5.0038804](https://doi.org/10.1063/5.0038804), [https://pubs.aip.org/aip/  
2106 jap/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/5.0038804/15259555/141101\\_1\\_online.pdf](https://pubs.aip.org/aip/jap/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/5.0038804/15259555/141101_1_online.pdf).
- 2107 [85] B. A. Bernevig and S.-C. Zhang, *Quantum spin hall effect*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **96**,  
2108 106802 (2006), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.96.106802](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.96.106802).
- 2109 [86] I. Knez, R.-R. Du and G. Sullivan, *Evidence for helical edge modes in  
2110 inverted InAs/GaSb quantum wells*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **107**, 136603 (2011),  
2111 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.107.136603](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.107.136603).
- 2112 [87] L. Du, I. Knez, G. Sullivan and R.-R. Du, *Robust helical edge trans-  
2113 port in gated InAs/GaSb bilayers*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **114**, 096802 (2015),  
2114 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.114.096802](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.114.096802).
- 2115 [88] S. Tang, C. Zhang, D. Wong, Z. Pedramrazi, H.-Z. Tsai, C. Jia, B. Moritz,  
2116 M. Claassen, H. Ryu, S. Kahn, J. Jiang, H. Yan *et al.*, *Quantum spin hall state in  
2117 monolayer  $1t'$ -wte<sub>2</sub>*, Nat. Phys. **13**(7), 683 (2017), doi:[10.1038/nphys4174](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys4174).
- 2118 [89] S. Wu, V. Fatemi, Q. D. Gibson, K. Watanabe, T. Taniguchi, R. J. Cava and  
2119 P. Jarillo-Herrero, *Observation of the quantum spin hall effect up to 100 kelvin in  
2120 a monolayer crystal*, Science **359**(6371), 76 (2018), doi:[10.1126/science.aan6003](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aan6003),  
2121 <https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.aan6003>.
- 2122 [90] J. E. Hirsch, *Spin hall effect*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **83**, 1834 (1999),  
2123 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.83.1834](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.83.1834).
- 2124 [91] J. Balakrishnan, G. Kok Wai Koon, M. Jaiswal, A. H. Castro Neto and B. Özyilmaz,  
2125 *Colossal enhancement of spin-orbit coupling in weakly hydrogenated graphene*, Nat.  
2126 Phys. **9**(5), 284 (2013), doi:[10.1038/nphys2576](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys2576).
- 2127 [92] J. Sinova, S. O. Valenzuela, J. Wunderlich, C. H. Back and T. Jungwirth, *Spin hall  
2128 effects*, Rev. Mod. Phys. **87**, 1213 (2015), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.87.1213](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.87.1213).
- 2129 [93] K. v. Klitzing, G. Dorda and M. Pepper, *New method for high-accuracy determi-  
2130 nation of the fine-structure constant based on quantized hall resistance*, Phys. Rev.  
2131 Lett. **45**, 494 (1980), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.45.494](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.45.494).
- 2132 [94] R. B. Laughlin, *Quantized hall conductivity in two dimensions*, Phys. Rev. B **23**,  
2133 5632 (1981), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.23.5632](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.23.5632).
- 2134 [95] N. Nagaosa, J. Sinova, S. Onoda, A. H. MacDonald and N. P. Ong, *Anomalous hall  
2135 effect*, Rev. Mod. Phys. **82**, 1539 (2010), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1539](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1539).
- 2136 [96] M. Kohmoto, *Topological invariant and the quantization of the hall conductance*, An-  
2137 nals of Physics **160**(2), 343 (1985), doi:[https://doi.org/10.1016/0003-4916\(85\)90148-  
2138 4](https://doi.org/10.1016/0003-4916(85)90148-4).
- 2139 [97] Q. Niu, D. J. Thouless and Y.-S. Wu, *Quantized hall conductance as a topological  
2140 invariant*, Phys. Rev. B **31**, 3372 (1985), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.31.3372](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.31.3372).
- 2141 [98] D. Xiao, M.-C. Chang and Q. Niu, *Berry phase effects on electronic properties*, Rev.  
2142 Mod. Phys. **82**, 1959 (2010), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1959](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.82.1959).
- 2143 [99] M. Büttiker, *Absence of backscattering in the quantum hall effect in multiprobe  
2144 conductors*, Phys. Rev. B **38**, 9375 (1988), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.38.9375](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.38.9375).

- 2145 [100] T. Fukui, K. Shiozaki, T. Fujiwara and S. Fujimoto, *Bulk-edge correspondence for*  
2146 *chern topological phases: A viewpoint from a generalized index theorem*, J. Phys.  
2147 Soc. Jpn. **81**(11), 114602 (2012), doi:[10.1143/JPSJ.81.114602](https://doi.org/10.1143/JPSJ.81.114602), [https://doi.org/10.](https://doi.org/10.1143/JPSJ.81.114602)  
2148 [1143/JPSJ.81.114602](https://doi.org/10.1143/JPSJ.81.114602).
- 2149 [101] X.-L. Qi, Y.-S. Wu and S.-C. Zhang, *Topological quantization of the spin hall effect*  
2150 *in two-dimensional paramagnetic semiconductors*, Phys. Rev. B **74**, 085308 (2006),  
2151 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.74.085308](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.74.085308).
- 2152 [102] C.-X. Liu, S.-C. Zhang and X.-L. Qi, *The quantum anomalous hall ef-*  
2153 *fect: Theory and experiment*, Annu. Rev. Condens. Matter Phys. **7**(1), 301  
2154 (2016), doi:[10.1146/annurev-conmatphys-031115-011417](https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-conmatphys-031115-011417), [https://doi.org/10.1146/](https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-conmatphys-031115-011417)  
2155 [annurev-conmatphys-031115-011417](https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-conmatphys-031115-011417).
- 2156 [103] J. G. Checkelsky, R. Yoshimi, A. Tsukazaki, K. S. Takahashi, Y. Kozuka, J. Falson,  
2157 M. Kawasaki and Y. Tokura, *Trajectory of the anomalous hall effect towards the*  
2158 *quantized state in a ferromagnetic topological insulator*, Nat. Phys. **10**(10), 731  
2159 (2014), doi:[10.1038/nphys3053](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys3053).
- 2160 [104] X. Kou, S.-T. Guo, Y. Fan, L. Pan, M. Lang, Y. Jiang, Q. Shao, T. Nie, K. Murata,  
2161 J. Tang, Y. Wang, L. He *et al.*, *Scale-invariant quantum anomalous hall effect in*  
2162 *magnetic topological insulators beyond the two-dimensional limit*, Phys. Rev. Lett.  
2163 **113**, 137201 (2014), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.113.137201](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.113.137201).
- 2164 [105] M. Mogi, R. Yoshimi, A. Tsukazaki, K. Yasuda, Y. Kozuka, K. S. Takahashi,  
2165 M. Kawasaki and Y. Tokura, *Magnetic modulation doping in topological insu-*  
2166 *lators toward higher-temperature quantum anomalous Hall effect*, Appl. Phys.  
2167 Lett. **107**(18), 182401 (2015), doi:[10.1063/1.4935075](https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4935075), [https://pubs.aip.org/aip/apl/](https://pubs.aip.org/aip/apl/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/1.4935075/14470575/182401_1_online.pdf)  
2168 [article-pdf/doi/10.1063/1.4935075/14470575/182401\\_1\\_online.pdf](https://pubs.aip.org/aip/apl/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/1.4935075/14470575/182401_1_online.pdf).
- 2169 [106] C.-Z. Chang, W. Zhao, D. Y. Kim, H. Zhang, B. A. Assaf, D. Heiman, S.-C. Zhang,  
2170 C. Liu, M. H. W. Chan and J. S. Moodera, *High-precision realization of robust*  
2171 *quantum anomalous hall state in a hard ferromagnetic topological insulator*, Nat.  
2172 Mater. **14**(5), 473 (2015), doi:[10.1038/nmat4204](https://doi.org/10.1038/nmat4204).
- 2173 [107] Y. Ou, C. Liu, G. Jiang, Y. Feng, D. Zhao, W. Wu, X.-X. Wang, W. Li, C. Song,  
2174 L.-L. Wang, W. Wang, W. Wu *et al.*, *Enhancing the quantum anomalous hall effect*  
2175 *by magnetic codoping in a topological insulator*, Adv. Mater. **30**(1), 1703062 (2018),  
2176 doi:<https://doi.org/10.1002/adma.201703062>, [https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/](https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1002/adma.201703062)  
2177 [pdf/10.1002/adma.201703062](https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1002/adma.201703062).
- 2178 [108] R. Watanabe, R. Yoshimi, M. Kawamura, M. Mogi, A. Tsukazaki, X. Z. Yu, K. Naka-  
2179 jima, K. S. Takahashi, M. Kawasaki and Y. Tokura, *Quantum anomalous Hall effect*  
2180 *driven by magnetic proximity coupling in all-telluride based heterostructure*, Applied  
2181 Physics Letters **115**(10), 102403 (2019), doi:[10.1063/1.5111891](https://doi.org/10.1063/1.5111891), [https://pubs.aip.](https://pubs.aip.org/aip/apl/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/1.5111891/13270032/102403_1_online.pdf)  
2182 [org/aip/apl/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/1.5111891/13270032/102403\\_1\\_online.pdf](https://pubs.aip.org/aip/apl/article-pdf/doi/10.1063/1.5111891/13270032/102403_1_online.pdf).
- 2183 [109] Y. Deng, Y. Yu, M. Z. Shi, Z. Guo, Z. Xu, J. Wang, X. H. Chen and Y. Zhang,  
2184 *Quantum anomalous hall effect in intrinsic magnetic topological insulator MnBi<sub>2</sub>Te<sub>4</sub>*,  
2185 Science **367**(6480), 895 (2020), doi:[10.1126/science.aax8156](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aax8156), [https://www.science.](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.aax8156)  
2186 [org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.aax8156](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.aax8156).

- 2187 [110] C. Liu, Y. Wang, H. Li, Y. Wu, Y. Li, J. Li, K. He, Y. Xu, J. Zhang and Y. Wang,  
2188 *Robust axion insulator and chern insulator phases in a two-dimensional antiferro-*  
2189 *magnetic topological insulator*, Nat. Mater. **19**(5), 522 (2020), doi:[10.1038/s41563-](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41563-019-0573-3)  
2190 [019-0573-3](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41563-019-0573-3).
- 2191 [111] C. Lei, S. Chen and A. H. MacDonald, *Magnetized topological insulator multilayers*,  
2192 Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. **117**(44), 27224 (2020), doi:[10.1073/pnas.2014004117](https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2014004117),  
2193 <https://www.pnas.org/doi/pdf/10.1073/pnas.2014004117>.
- 2194 [112] R. S. K. Mong, A. M. Essin and J. E. Moore, *Antiferromagnetic topological insula-*  
2195 *tors*, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 245209 (2010), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.81.245209](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.81.245209).
- 2196 [113] A. M. Essin, J. E. Moore and D. Vanderbilt, *Magnetoelectric polarizability and*  
2197 *axion electrodynamics in crystalline insulators*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **102**, 146805 (2009),  
2198 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.102.146805](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.102.146805).
- 2199 [114] J. Wang, B. Lian, X.-L. Qi and S.-C. Zhang, *Quantized topological magnetoelectric*  
2200 *effect of the zero-plateau quantum anomalous hall state*, Phys. Rev. B **92**, 081107  
2201 (2015), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.92.081107](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.92.081107).
- 2202 [115] B. Fu, Z.-A. Hu and S.-Q. Shen, *Bulk-hinge correspondence and three-dimensional*  
2203 *quantum anomalous hall effect in second-order topological insulators*, Phys. Rev.  
2204 Res. **3**, 033177 (2021), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevResearch.3.033177](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevResearch.3.033177).
- 2205 [116] R. Chen and S.-Q. Shen, *On the half-quantized hall conductance of massive surface*  
2206 *electrons in magnetic topological insulator films*, Science China Physics, Mechanics  
2207 & Astronomy **67**(6), 267011 (2024), doi:[10.1007/s11433-023-2352-0](https://doi.org/10.1007/s11433-023-2352-0).
- 2208 [117] F. Wilczek, *Two applications of axion electrodynamics*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **58**, 1799  
2209 (1987), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.58.1799](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.58.1799).
- 2210 [118] D. M. Neno, C. A. C. Garcia, J. Gooth, C. Felser and P. Narang, *Axion physics in*  
2211 *condensed-matter systems*, Nat. Rev. Phys. **2**(12), 682 (2020), doi:[10.1038/s42254-](https://doi.org/10.1038/s42254-020-0240-2)  
2212 [020-0240-2](https://doi.org/10.1038/s42254-020-0240-2).
- 2213 [119] R.-L. Chu, J. Shi and S.-Q. Shen, *Surface edge state and half-quantized*  
2214 *hall conductance in topological insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **84**, 085312 (2011),  
2215 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.84.085312](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.84.085312).
- 2216 [120] R. Li, J. Wang, X.-L. Qi and S.-C. Zhang, *Dynamical axion field in topological*  
2217 *magnetic insulators*, Nat. Phys. **6**(4), 284 (2010), doi:[10.1038/nphys1534](https://doi.org/10.1038/nphys1534).
- 2218 [121] X.-L. Qi, R. Li, J. Zang and S.-C. Zhang, *Inducing a magnetic monopole with topo-*  
2219 *logical surface states*, Science **323**(5918), 1184 (2009), doi:[10.1126/science.1167747](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1167747),  
2220 <https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1167747>.
- 2221 [122] W.-K. Tse and A. H. MacDonald, *Giant magneto-optical kerr effect and universal*  
2222 *faraday effect in thin-film topological insulators*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **105**, 057401 (2010),  
2223 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.105.057401](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.105.057401).
- 2224 [123] K. Nomura and N. Nagaosa, *Surface-quantized anomalous hall current and the*  
2225 *magnetoelectric effect in magnetically disordered topological insulators*, Phys. Rev.  
2226 Lett. **106**, 166802 (2011), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.106.166802](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.106.166802).

- 2227 [124] T. Morimoto, A. Furusaki and N. Nagaosa, *Topological magnetoelectric ef-*  
2228 *fects in thin films of topological insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **92**, 085113 (2015),  
2229 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.92.085113](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.92.085113).
- 2230 [125] N. Varnava and D. Vanderbilt, *Surfaces of axion insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **98**, 245117  
2231 (2018), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.98.245117](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.98.245117).
- 2232 [126] M. M. Vazifeh and M. Franz, *Quantization and  $2\pi$  periodicity of the*  
2233 *axion action in topological insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **82**, 233103 (2010),  
2234 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.82.233103](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.82.233103).
- 2235 [127] C. Fang, M. J. Gilbert and B. A. Bernevig, *Topological insulators*  
2236 *with commensurate antiferromagnetism*, Phys. Rev. B **88**, 085406 (2013),  
2237 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.88.085406](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.88.085406).
- 2238 [128] D. Xiao, J. Jiang, J.-H. Shin, W. Wang, F. Wang, Y.-F. Zhao, C. Liu, W. Wu,  
2239 M. H. W. Chan, N. Samarth and C.-Z. Chang, *Realization of the axion insulator*  
2240 *state in quantum anomalous hall sandwich heterostructures*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **120**,  
2241 056801 (2018), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.120.056801](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.120.056801).
- 2242 [129] D. S. Lee, T.-H. Kim, C.-H. Park, C.-Y. Chung, Y. S. Lim, W.-S. Seo and H.-H. Park,  
2243 *Crystal structure, properties and nanostructuring of a new layered chalcogenide semi-*  
2244 *conductor,  $\text{Bi}_2\text{MnTe}_4$* , CrystEngComm **15**, 5532 (2013), doi:[10.1039/C3CE40643A](https://doi.org/10.1039/C3CE40643A).
- 2245 [130] Y. Gong, J. Guo, J. Li, K. Zhu, M. Liao, X. Liu, Q. Zhang, L. Gu, L. Tang,  
2246 X. Feng, D. Zhang, W. Li *et al.*, *Experimental realization of an intrinsic magnetic*  
2247 *topological insulator\**, Chin. Phys. Lett. **36**(7), 076801 (2019), doi:[10.1088/0256-](https://doi.org/10.1088/0256-307X/36/7/076801)  
2248 [307X/36/7/076801](https://doi.org/10.1088/0256-307X/36/7/076801).
- 2249 [131] P. Wang, J. Ge, J. Li, Y. Liu, Y. Xu and J. Wang, *Intrinsic*  
2250 *magnetic topological insulators*, The Innovation **2**(2), 100098 (2021),  
2251 doi:<https://doi.org/10.1016/j.xinn.2021.100098>.
- 2252 [132] M. M. Otrokov, T. V. Menshchikova, M. G. Vergniory, I. P. Rusinov, A. Y. Vya-  
2253 zovskaya, Y. M. Koroteev, G. Bihlmayer, A. Ernst, P. M. Echenique, A. Arnau  
2254 and E. V. Chulkov, *Highly-ordered wide bandgap materials for quantized anomalous*  
2255 *hall and magnetoelectric effects*, 2D Mater. **4**(2), 025082 (2017), doi:[10.1088/2053-](https://doi.org/10.1088/2053-1583/aa6bec)  
2256 [1583/aa6bec](https://doi.org/10.1088/2053-1583/aa6bec).
- 2257 [133] J. Li, Y. Li, S. Du, Z. Wang, B.-L. Gu, S.-C. Zhang, K. He, W. Duan and Y. Xu,  
2258 *Intrinsic magnetic topological insulators in van der waals layered  $\text{MnBi}_2\text{Te}_4$ -family*  
2259 *materials*, Sci. Adv. **5**(6), eaaw5685 (2019), doi:[10.1126/sciadv.aaw5685](https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.aaw5685), [https://](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/sciadv.aaw5685)  
2260 [www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/sciadv.aaw5685](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/sciadv.aaw5685).
- 2261 [134] J. Ge, Y. Liu, J. Li, H. Li, T. Luo, Y. Wu, Y. Xu and J. Wang, *High-Chern-number*  
2262 *and high-temperature quantum Hall effect without Landau levels*, Nat. Sci. Rev. **7**(8),  
2263 1280 (2020), doi:[10.1093/nsr/nwaa089](https://doi.org/10.1093/nsr/nwaa089), [https://academic.oup.com/nsr/article-pdf/](https://academic.oup.com/nsr/article-pdf/7/8/1280/38881797/nwaa089.pdf)  
2264 [7/8/1280/38881797/nwaa089.pdf](https://academic.oup.com/nsr/article-pdf/7/8/1280/38881797/nwaa089.pdf).
- 2265 [135] D. Zhang, M. Shi, T. Zhu, D. Xing, H. Zhang and J. Wang, *Topological axion states*  
2266 *in the magnetic insulator  $\text{mnbi}_2\text{te}_4$  with the quantized magnetoelectric effect*, Phys.  
2267 Rev. Lett. **122**, 206401 (2019), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.122.206401](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.122.206401).
- 2268 [136] J. B. Kogut, *The lattice gauge theory approach to quantum chromodynamics*, Rev.  
2269 Mod. Phys. **55**, 775 (1983), doi:[10.1103/RevModPhys.55.775](https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.55.775).

- 2270 [137] T. Hatsuda and T. Kunihiro, *Qcd phenomenology based on a chiral effective*  
2271 *lagrangian*, Phys. Rep. **247**(5), 221 (1994), doi:[https://doi.org/10.1016/0370-](https://doi.org/10.1016/0370-1573(94)90022-1)  
2272 [1573\(94\)90022-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/0370-1573(94)90022-1).
- 2273 [138] P. Nason, *The lattice schwinger model with slac fermions*, Nucl. Phys. B **260**(2),  
2274 269 (1985), doi:[https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213\(85\)90072-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/0550-3213(85)90072-0).
- 2275 [139] Z.-X. Li, A. Vaezi, C. B. Mendl and H. Yao, *Numerical observation of emer-*  
2276 *gent spacetime supersymmetry at quantum criticality*, Sci. Adv. **4**(11), eaau1463  
2277 (2018), doi:[10.1126/sciadv.aau1463](https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.aau1463), [https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/sciadv.aau1463)  
2278 [sciadv.aau1463](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/sciadv.aau1463).
- 2279 [140] R. Stacey, *Eliminating lattice fermion doubling*, Phys. Rev. D **26**, 468 (1982),  
2280 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevD.26.468](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevD.26.468).
- 2281 [141] C. W. J. Beenakker, A. Donís Vela, G. Lemut, M. J. Pacholski and J. Tworzydło,  
2282 *Tangent fermions: Dirac or majorana fermions on a lattice without fermion doubling*,  
2283 Ann. Phys. **535**(7), 2300081 (2023), doi:<https://doi.org/10.1002/andp.202300081>,  
2284 <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1002/andp.202300081>.
- 2285 [142] H.-W. Wang, B. Fu and S.-Q. Shen, *Signature of parity anomaly: Crossover from*  
2286 *one half to integer quantized hall conductance in a finite magnetic field*, Phys. Rev.  
2287 B **109**, 075113 (2024), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.109.075113](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.109.075113).
- 2288 [143] A. M. M. Pruisken, *Universal singularities in the integral quantum hall effect*, Phys.  
2289 Rev. Lett. **61**, 1297 (1988), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.61.1297](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.61.1297).
- 2290 [144] J. Zhang, C.-Z. Chang, P. Tang, Z. Zhang, X. Feng, K. Li, L. li Wang,  
2291 X. Chen, C. Liu, W. Duan, K. He, Q.-K. Xue *et al.*, *Topology-driven mag-*  
2292 *netic quantum phase transition in topological insulators*, Science **339**(6127), 1582  
2293 (2013), doi:[10.1126/science.1230905](https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1230905), [https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1230905)  
2294 [science.1230905](https://www.science.org/doi/pdf/10.1126/science.1230905).
- 2295 [145] Y.-F. Zhao, R. Zhang, R. Mei, L.-J. Zhou, H. Yi, Y.-Q. Zhang, J. Yu, R. Xiao,  
2296 K. Wang, N. Samarth, M. H. W. Chan, C.-X. Liu *et al.*, *Tuning the chern*  
2297 *number in quantum anomalous hall insulators*, Nature **588**(7838), 419 (2020),  
2298 doi:[10.1038/s41586-020-3020-3](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-020-3020-3).
- 2299 [146] T. Fukui, Y. Hatsugai and H. Suzuki, *Chern numbers in discretized brillouin zone:*  
2300 *Efficient method of computing (spin) hall conductances*, J. Phys. Soc. Jpn. **74**(6),  
2301 1674 (2005), doi:[10.1143/JPSJ.74.1674](https://doi.org/10.1143/JPSJ.74.1674), <https://doi.org/10.1143/JPSJ.74.1674>.
- 2302 [147] D. Levine and P. J. Steinhardt, *Quasicrystals: A new class of ordered structures*,  
2303 Phys. Rev. Lett. **53**, 2477 (1984), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.53.2477](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.53.2477).
- 2304 [148] L. Fu and C. L. Kane, *Superconducting proximity effect and majorana fermions*  
2305 *at the surface of a topological insulator*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **100**, 096407 (2008),  
2306 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.100.096407](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.100.096407).
- 2307 [149] X.-L. Qi, T. L. Hughes and S.-C. Zhang, *Chiral topological supercon-*  
2308 *ductor from the quantum hall state*, Phys. Rev. B **82**, 184516 (2010),  
2309 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.82.184516](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.82.184516).
- 2310 [150] J. Wang, Q. Zhou, B. Lian and S.-C. Zhang, *Chiral topological superconductor and*  
2311 *half-integer conductance plateau from quantum anomalous hall plateau transition*,  
2312 Phys. Rev. B **92**, 064520 (2015), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.92.064520](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.92.064520).



- 2313 [151] B. Fu and S.-Q. Shen, *Anomalous coherence length of majorana zero modes at*  
2314 *vortices in superconducting topological insulators*, Phys. Rev. B **107**, 184517 (2023),  
2315 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.107.184517](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.107.184517).
- 2316 [152] J. Li, R.-L. Chu, J. K. Jain and S.-Q. Shen, *Topological anderson insulator*, Phys.  
2317 Rev. Lett. **102**, 136806 (2009), doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.102.136806](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.102.136806).
- 2318 [153] C. W. Groth, M. Wimmer, A. R. Akhmerov, J. Tworzydło and C. W. J. Beenakker,  
2319 *Theory of the topological anderson insulator*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **103**, 196805 (2009),  
2320 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.103.196805](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.103.196805).
- 2321 [154] H.-M. Guo, G. Rosenberg, G. Refael and M. Franz, *Topological ander-*  
2322 *son insulator in three dimensions*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **105**, 216601 (2010),  
2323 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevLett.105.216601](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.105.216601).
- 2324 [155] X.-X. Yi, C.-B. Hua, R. Chen and B. Zhou, *Disorder-enhanced layer hall ef-*  
2325 *fect in a magnetic sandwich heterostructure*, Phys. Rev. B **109**, 115301 (2024),  
2326 doi:[10.1103/PhysRevB.109.115301](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevB.109.115301).